

GENERAL INDEX

by MURIEL MOYLE

NOTES

- (1) Articles (such as 'the', 'al-', etc.) occurring at the beginning of an entry, and prefixes (such as 'de', 'van', etc.) are ignored in the alphabetical sequence. Saints appear among all letters of the alphabet according to their proper names. Styles such as Mr, Dr, if occurring in book titles or phrases, are ignored; if with proper names, printed following them.
- (2) The various parts of hyphenated words are treated as separate words in the alphabetical sequence. It should be remembered that, in accordance with the conventions adopted, some Chinese proper names are written as separate syllables while others are written as one word.
- (3) In the arrangement of Chinese words, Chh- and Hs- follow normal alphabetical sequence, and *ü* is treated as equivalent to *u*.
- (4) References to footnotes are not given except for certain special subjects with which the text does not deal. They are indicated by brackets containing the superscript letter of the footnote.
- (5) Explanatory words in brackets indicating fields of work are added for Chinese scientific and technological persons (and occasionally for some of other cultures), but not for political or military figures (except kings and princes).

- A-la-chi chiu* (Mongolian *araki*), 135
A-Lo-Na-Shun (usurping minister at the court of Magadha, +648), 197
Aaron of Alexandria (priest and physician, +7th century), 411
'Abbāsid Caliphate (+750 to +1258), 389, 391, 417
'Abd al-Malik (Caliph, r. +685 to +705), 475
Abishag the Shunamite, 497 (b)
Abkhasia, Russian Georgia, 507
Ablution (alchemical process), 9
Abraxas talisman, 375, 376
Abū'l 'Abbas Shihāb al-Dīn al-'Umarī (geographer, d. +1338), 417 (g)
Abū 'Abd Allāh Muḥammad ibn Ahmad ibn Yūsuf al-Khwārizmī (encyclopaedist, +10th century), 424 (j), 436 (e)
Abū Bakr 'Ali ibn Muḥammad al-Khurāsānī (Jābirian commentator, fl. +10th century), 393 (o)
Abū al-Faraj al-Malāṭī (Jacobite Patriarch Gregorius, and astronomer, d. +1386), 411, 452 (g), 476 (f)
Abū'l-Hasan (*Phu-Ko-San*, envoy to China, +958), 158
Abū Ja'far Muḥammad ibn abī al-'Azāqīr al-Shalmaghānī (mystical theologian, perhaps Jābirian writer and commentator, martyred +933, or +934), 393 (o)
Abū Ja'far Muḥammad ibn Jarīr al-Tabarī (historian, +838 to +923), 451 (i)
Abū Manṣūr 'Abd al-Malik al-Thā'ālibī (writer, +961 to +1038), 425 (e)
- Abū Mansūr* al-Harawī (+10th-century Persian physician), 60
Abū Ma'shar. *See* *Ja'far al-Balkhī* . . .
Abū Muḥrūz Khalaf al-Āhmār (poet and literary historian, d. c. +800), 423
Abū Naṣr Muḥ. ibn Muḥ. ibn Tarkhān ibn Uzloḡ al-Fārābī (philosophical commentator, d. +950; 'the Second Master') 405, 423 (d), 469
Abū al-Qāsim al-Zahrāwī (Abulcasis, physician, pharmacist and medical encyclopaedist, d. c. +1013), 60, 128
Abū al-Qāsim Ḥasan ibn 'Ali al-Tūṣī. *See* *Firdawṣī*
Abū Qirān al-Nisibī (Jābirian commentator, +10th century), 393 (o)
Abulcasis. *See* *Abū al-Qāsim al-Zahrāwī*
Acarnanians, 500
Accessibility of truth, universal, 324 (b)
Account of the Travels of the Emperor Mu. *See* *Mu Thien Tzu Chuan*
Acetarsone, 192
Acetate ion, 179
Acetic acid, 21, 153, 155, 172, 173, 176, 177, 185, 196
 concentration of, 178–9
 glacial, 178
 See also *Vinegar*
Acetone, 178
Achaemenid period, 334
Achiwa Gorō (1), 502
Acidosis, 446 (b)
Acoustics, 298, 305
Acta Sanctorum (Bollandists), 340 (e)

- Action and reaction, 307
 Action at a distance, 308, 502
 Acts of Archelaus, 386 (e)
 Acts of the Holy Apostle Thomas, 377, 383, 384
 Acts of Kyriakos and Julitta, 377
 Acts of St Procopius (early +8th century), 340
 Adam, 369 (c), 483, 494
 Adam and Eve, sulphur and mercury, Yang and Yin, 376 (h)
 Adam's Peak in Ceylon, 412 (h)
 Adelard of Bath (translator, fl. +1130), 403
Adhaspātana-yantra, 55 (e)
 'Adl (justice, or equilibrium), 461, 477, 480.
 See also *Krasis*
 Administration of the Emperor Akbar. See *A'in-i Akbari*
Adhritūs, identification of the word, 475–6
 Aegean sea, 334
 Aeneas of Gaza (+484), 344
 Aeon (God of Sabaōth, in Gnosticism), 377 (j)
 Aetites, 205–7, 356 (a), 364
 Aetius of Amida (physician and medical encyclopaedist, fl. +530 to +560), 473 (j)
Affinitas, 322
 Affinities, 312, 313, 320. *See also* Chemical affinities
 Afghanistan, 423
 Africa, 111
 North, 388
 South, 385
 Africanus, Sextus Julius (writer on chemical and other techniques, d. +232), 327
 'After-burning wine' (*chi shao chiu*), 143
 Agathodaemon, 327, 344, 345, 375, 415. *See also* Hermes-Agathodaemon
 Ageing, 236, 507 (d)
 deceleration of, 243–4
 Agricola, Georgius (+16th-century metallurgist), 58, 180
 Agronomy, 325
Aguamiel, 108 (a)
 Ahmad al-Sabti (diviner, +12th century), 471
 Ahriman, 334
 Ahura-Mazda, 334
 The Aim of the Sage (Pseudo-al-Majritī). *See* Kitāb Ghayat al-Hakim
Ain al-Šan'a wa'aun al-Šana'a (Essence of the Art and Aid to the Workers), 402
A'in-i Akbari (The Administration of the Emperor Akbar), 106
 Air, all phenomenal things composed of, 222
 al-Akfānī. *See* al-Sakhawi, Muhammad . . .
Akhbār al-Šin wa'l-Hind (A Relation of China and India), 417
 Akkadian cuneiform tablets, 82
 Alamūt, 397
Albedo. *See* Whitening
 Albertus Magnus (Albert of Bollstadt, +1206 to +1280), 322, 367, 368, 491–2
 Albumasar. *See* Abū Ma'shar Ja'far al-Balkhī
 Albumen, 295
 Alchemical apparatus, 1 ff., 162–7, 248, 272, 395
 cosmic correspondences in, 279–81
 Alchemical formulae, 216–17
 Alchemical poets, 327, 401, 491
 Alchemical Preparations of Master Mo. *See* *Mo Tzu Tan Fa*
 Alchemical stories, 419–20
 Alchemical texts, 68, 148, 171, 182, 186, 189, 194, 211, 220–1, 456
 Arabic. *See* Arabic alchemical texts
 Persian. *See* Persian alchemical texts
 Syriac. *See* Syriac alchemical texts
 Alchemical treasure, from lowest and most repulsive origins, 436
 'The Alchemist' (Ben Jonson), 242–3, 278–9, 327 (k), 453
 Alchemy and alchemists
 animal substances in, 403
 and the Apocalypse, 216
 Arabic. *See* Arabic alchemy
 Chinese priority in, 76
 External, 266, 298
 hu merchants and, 419–21
 laboratory, 212, 220, 245–6, 247, 249, 250, 255, 275
 mating of contraries in, 318
 medicine and, 220–1, 303, 505–6
 meditational, 233
 and modern chemistry, contrasted, 275–6, 366
 Paracelsus' doctrines on, 505 ff.
 Persian. *See* Persia
 physiological, 17 (b), 212, 233, 240, 245–6, 249, 254 (a), 255, 265, 266, 281, 288, 291, 293, 306, 319, 353, 372, 419–20, 476, 497, 501
 and proto-science, 243–4, 298
 quantitative factors in, 300
 relations between theory and practice, 220–1, 255
 respiratory, 268
 ritual acts and. *See* Rites and ceremonies
 secrecy of, 70, 259, 324
 sexual, 268, 503
 speculative and operational, 495
 Syriac, 11
 Taoism and. *See* Taoism
 technical terms. *See* Technical terms
 theoretical, 248–50, 298
 time and, 221–3
 value for State Treasury, 494, 495 (d)
 Western. *See* Europe
 Alcohol, 43, 103, 131, 179, 395, 499
 boiling point, 124
 concentrates, 155
 discovery of, 98, 124, 127
 distillation of. *See* Distillation
 ethyl, 122
 illegal, 110–1
 medical use of, 122–3, 135, 136, 149
 praise of, 121–2
 specific heat of, 125
 Alcohol-content
 of distilled Chinese spirits, 68
 of wines, 128

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

INDEX

695

- Alcohol solutions, 158
 above 40% in strength, 157
 made by congelation method, 140
- Alderotti, Taddeo (physician and chemist, late +13th century), 44, 92, 93, 94, 122, 123
- Alembics, 84, 86, 87, 128, 131, 132, 149
 distillation with, 60
 makers of, 426
- Aleppo, 410
- Alexander of Aphrodisias (+3rd century), 60
- Alexander the Great (d. -323), 333, 334, 369, 387, 409, 412 (d)
- Alexander-Romance, 449, 494 (a), 498 (c)
- Alexander of Tralles (physician and medical writer, c. +525 to +605), 473 (j)
- Alexandria, 333, 387
 destruction of the Library and Museum, 328
- Alexandrian mechanicians, 488
- Alexandrian proto-chemists. *See* Hellenistic proto-chemists
- Alexandrian still. *See* Stills, Hellenistic
- Alfraganus. *See* Ibn Kaṭr al-Farghānī . . .
- Algazel. *See* al-Ghazālī . . .
- Algebra, 424
- Algerians
 extraction apparatus, 106, 107, 120
 steam distillation, 130
- 'Ali (the Prophet's son-in-law), 396
- 'Ali ibn al-'Abbās al-Majūsī ('the Mage' or 'Zoroastrian', Persian physician and medical writer, d. +994), 484
- 'Ali ibn Sahl Rabbān al-Ṭabarī (physician and medical writer, d. +860), 463
- Alkahest (universal solvent), 198
- Alkali metals, 174, 187
- Alkalies, 395, 398
 volatile, 433
- 'Alkaline air', 433
- Allāmī, Abū'l-Fażl (historian, c. +1590), 106
- Allantoic fluid, 368
- Allchin, F.R. (1), 86, 131
- Alloying, of precious metals with copper, tin, lead etc., 365
- Alloys, 402
 arsenical, 33
 bronze and brass, 431 (h)
 copper, 33, 74, 431 (h)
 cupro-nickel, 431 ff.
 deceitful, 332
 gold-copper, 402
 gold-like (*claudianon*), 326
 golden-coloured, 76, 295
 gold-containing, 353
 iron, 33
 lead, 33, 431 (h)
 paktong, 33, 431 ff.
 tin, 33
 uniform substrate, 335, 358
 'white copper', 430 (g)
- Almadén, Spain, mercury mines at, 49, 337
- Aloes-wood, 496 (f)
- Alopēn, Nestorian Bishop (+635), 505
- Altai mountains, 381, 437, 438
 miners of, 339
- Altar, in honour of Thai I, 465
- Altar of Heaven, 465 (e)
- Altar of the Nine Halls, 468 (b)
- Aludels, 18, 19, 22, 47, 49
 with 'shelves', 83
 of silver, 25
- Aluminium, 199
 oxide films of, 358
- Alums, 40, 173, 176, 196–7, 199, 200, 201, 202, 225, 262, 299, 315, 318, 320, 356, 434
- ammonia, 434
 'bird-droppings —', 203
 'essence of', 198
 solubilisation of, 168, 171, 172
 yellow iron, 173
- Amalgamation, 57 (e), 313, 317, 337
- Amalgamation gilding. *See* Gilding
- Amalgamation silvering. *See* Silvering
- Amalgams, 7 (b), 54, 76, 174, 255, 256, 257, 317, 358, 380
 copper-mercury, 74
 tin-mercury, 402
 zinc-mercury, 317
- Amber, 235, 312, 315, 337
 fossil, 363
- Ambergris, 496
- Ambix*, 58, 80, 81, 124, 126
- Ameisenova, Zofia, 93
- Americas, discovery of the, 165
- Ammonia, 204, 395, 433, 448
 alum, 434
 gaseous, 433
 salts of, 435
- 'Ammoniac salt', 433, 447
- Ammonium carbonate, 204, 404 (g), 409, 432, 433, 434, 435
 evaporation of, 461
 formation of, by exchange with lime salts, 441
- Ammonium chloride (sal ammoniac), 184, 196, 197, 204, 295, 317, 320, 373, 390, 395, 398, 402, 409, 412, 432, 433, 435–6, 437, 439, 441
 in China, 439 ff., 447
 elixir made from, 481
 evaporation of, 461
 industry, 443
 medical uses of, 442, 481
 purification of, 442
 refrigerant effect of, 440
 source of, 437 ff.
 terminology. *See* Technical terms
- Ammonium sulphide, 126
- Amniotic fluid, 368
- Amoy dialect, 352
- Amphisbaena (two-headed serpent), 52
- Amphoras, 143 (e)
- Amulets. *See* Talismans
- Amūn-Ra, temple of, 433
- Amusing Anecdotes of the Chhi Man Tribes-folk, in Southern Hunan. *See* Chhi Man Tshung Hsiao

- An-Hsi. *See* Parthia
 An Lu-Shan (rebel general, c. +750), 416
 An-ting, Prince of, 145
 An-Tun embassy, 332
 Anacardia, 476 (b)
 Analogy, 322 (g)
Analytical Dictionary of Characters. See *Shuo Wén*
 Anastasius Silentarius (Byzantine emperor, +504), 345
Anathumiasis, 388, 457, 459
 Anatolia, 333
 Anaxilaus of Larissa (magician-technician, fl. —40 to —28), 331
 Anaximander, 399
 al-Andalusi (+13th-century astronomer at Maraghah), 425 (g)
al-Andalusi. *See* Ibn Arfa' Ra's . . .
 Andersson, J. G. (6), 25, 28; (8), 57
 Andes, 507
 Andhra Pradesh, 105
Ang chiu (greenish-white wine), 139 (g)
 Angels, fall of the, 340–1, 343
 Angelus, Johannes (+1488), 340
 Anhydrous salt, 183
Anima and *animus*, 227–8
Anima naturaliter materialistica, 229 (b)
 Animal lore, 311, 312
 Animal refuse, destructive distillation of, 433
 Animal substances, 395, 398, 401, 409, 435
 Animals, 314
 generation of, 401
 growth-cycles of, 243, 246
 nutrition of, 384
 waste matter of, 404
 Animation techniques, 488–9
 Ankylosis, 209
 Annals of the Latter-Day Sage . . . *See* *Shang-Chhing Hou Shêng Tao Chün Lieh Chi*
 Annamese language, 352
 Annular rim or gutter, 29–30, 80, 81, 82, 86, 94, 111, 113, 114, 115–7, 120, 130
 Annunciations of the Immortals, 214
 al-Anṣārī. *See* al-Dimashqī, Shams al-Dīn . . .
 Answers of the Venerable Master Lei concerning Drugs. *See* *Lei Kung Yao Tui*
 'Ant-gold' (*pipilika*), 339
 Antacid, 450
 Antelope horn, used for grinding, 162
 Anthocyanin, 147
Anthroparion, 487 (h)
 Anti-coining edicts, 330, 332
 'Anti-worldly' conceptions, 379
 Antidotes, 208
 Antigonus (first King of Asia Minor and Palestine, after Alexander, d. ~301), 333
 Antimony, 44, 358
 Antioch, 333
 Antipathies. *See* Sympathies and antipathies
 Ants, 'gold-digging', 338–9
 Anyanja. *See* Tribal peoples
 Apamea, 386 (d)
 Apepi, 375 (f)
 Aphorisms. *See* Proto-chemical aphorisms
 Aphrodisiacs, 496 (e)
 Aphrodite, magic girdle of, 339 (c)
 Apocalypse, Taoist, 216
 Apocryphal Classics. *See* Chhan Wei shu
 Apocryphal Treatise on the '(Book of) Changes' . . . *See* *I Wei Chhien Tso Tu*
 Apocryphal Treatise on the 'Spring and Autumn Annals'; the Mystical Diagrams of Cosmic Destiny. *See* *Chhun Chhiu Wei Yuan Ming Pao*
 Apollonius of Tyana (thaumaturgist, fl. c. +96), 369, 373
Apologeticus (Tertullian), 343 (b)
 Apostolic succession, 396
 'Applejack', 151 (c)
 Apricot, 453
Aqrābādhin (Pharmacopoeia, +10th century), 452 (k)
Aqua cuprosa, 199
Aqua fortis, 196
Aqua regia, 174, 176, 196, 197
 Arab conquests, 422, 423
 Arab empire, 416
 Arabic alchemical texts, 378, 425, 429, 432, 435, 469–70, 485
 Arabic alchemy, 22, 33, 83, 195, 236, 278, 323, 366, 373, 378, 389–408, 409, 427, 434, 435, 439, 471
 Chinese influence on, 417, 462, 469 ff.
 compared with Hellenistic proto-chemistry, 393–5
 East Asian influence on, 390, 401
 first appearance of mercury-sulphur theory in, 454
 magic square and, 468–9
 magical elements in, 395
 poison principle in, 484
 Arabic alphabet, numerical value of the letters of, 471
 Arabic aurification and aurifactors, 391, 393, 402, 403, 412, 475, 477
 Arabic aurifaction, 392, 393, 402, 404, 405, 408
 Arabic cultural boundaries, 388–9
 Arabic embassies, to China, 416
 Arabic geographical names, Chinese transliteration of, 423
 Arabic language, 351, 352, 355
 Arabic lists of the seven metals, 429
 Arabic medicine, 398, 425
 Arabic proto-chemistry, 427
 Chinese influence on, 462, 491
 Arabs, 115, 131, 178, 313, 335, 350, 351, 362, 369, 494
 artificial colouring of essential oils, 147
 distillation, 105, 127, 128, 158, 159, 160
 apparatus, 87, 111, 129
 elixirs, 472 ff.
 magic square, 464
 material immortality and longevity, 391, 393, 404, 498

- Arabs (*cont.*)
 merchants, 107, 417–21
 proto-chemical literature, 311
 saltpetre, 194
 sublimation of camphor, 49
 translations. *See* Translations
- Arak (Araqi)*, 112, 135, 137 (a), 148
- Aral Sea, 370
- Aramaic language, 334, 351
- Araqiath* (essential oils), 131 (a)
- Āras, 413
- Arcana, 505
- Arcane Essentials of the Fivefold Categorisation
 based on the 'Kinship of the Three'. *See*
Tshan Thung Chhi Wu Hsiang Lei Pi Yao
- Arcane Essentials of the Mainstream of Taoism . . .
See *Thai-Shang Chu Kuo Chiu Min Tsung Chen Pi Yao*
- Arcane Memorandum of the Red Pine Master, 240
- 'Arcanum of human blood', 487 (h), 497
- Archaeological excavations, 14, 26, 27, 51, 55, 85–6, 97, 162, 163, 376
- Archaeological Institute of Academia Sinica, Sian, 28, 30
- Archaeus, 470 (k), 506 (c)
- Archidoxis* (Paracelsus), 152, 322
- Ardashīr (fictive Persian King), 415
- Aristotle, and Aristotelian philosophy, 60, 122, 124, 128, 277, 305, 318, 322, 325, 329, 350, 362, 367
- Aristotelian four elements, 122, 336, 395, 400, 459, 460, 472 (g)
- Aristotelian four principles, 394
- Aristotelian physics of motion, 283 (b)
- Aristotelian terrestrial exhalations, 457
- Armadillo lizard, 385
- Armenia, 333, 335, 410, 485
- Armenian alchemical MSS, 73 (a), 111
- Armillary spheres, 487
- Arnold of Villanova (alchemical writer, c. +1235 to +1311), 454, 507
- Aromatics, 159
- Arrow-heads, 430, 431
- Arrowroot, 20
- Arsenate, 176, 191, 192
- Arsenic, 358, 374, 375, 434, 470, 473
 alloys of. *See* Alloys
 in medicine, 192
 solubilisation of, 176
 white, 294, 295
- Arsenic trioxide, 295
- Arsenic trisulphide, 295, 318
- Arsenical copper, 295, 402
- Arsenical sulphides, 40, 172, 177, 191, 295, 317, 356
- Arsenical vapours, and the treatment of base metals, 358
- Arsenious acid, 320
- Arsenious oxide, 191
- Arsenite, 176, 191, 192
- Arsenolite, 206, 225, 226, 287, 288
- Art, Ouroboros symbol in, 380–1, 384
- Art of Prolonging Life (Hufeland), 502
- Artephius, 402, 495
- Arthaśāstra*, 131, 132
- Artificers' Record. *See* *Khao Kung Chi*
- Artificial generation. *See* Generation
- Artisanal papyri, 365, 374
- Artisans, 190, 298, 329, 349
 ability to control Nature, 221, 243
 proto-chemical, 365
 settled in Baghdad, 416
- Asbestos, 177, 337, 422 (b)
- Ascetics, 373
- Asclepius* (Hermetic book), 314 (b)
- Asem*, 365
- Ash-baths, 32 (b), 294
- 'Ashara Kutub 'ala Ra'y Batinās Ṣāhib al-Tilasmāt
 ('Ten Books of the Opinions of Batinās,
 Lord of Talismans), 461
- Ash'aris (orthodox Islamic theologians and
 followers, +10th century), 429
- Ashmole, Elias (virtuoso, +1617 to +1692), 502 (h)
- Aspergillus* moulds, 135
- Assaying, 236
- Assemblies of philosophical alchemists, 366, 397, 398–9, 400 (b)
- Astral body, 470 (k)
- Astral lore, 334
- Astrography, 381, 384
- Astrolabists, 426
- Astrology, 280 (a), 304, 342, 402, 492
- Astronomy and astronomers, 220, 222–3, 292, 298, 305, 342, 392, 423, 424, 425
 nomenclature. *See* Technical terms
 polar-equatorial, 487
- 'Atā Ibn Əḥmad al-Samarqandi (astronomer,
 fl. +1362), 424 (a)
- Ataraxy, 245, 246, 372
- Atomic theories, 308, 374
- Atomic weights, 431
- Atoms, 388
 combination of, 321
 Hellenistic proto-chemists and, 374
- 'Atrabilious diseases', 483
- Atramentum* (ferrous sulphate). *See* Ferrous sulphate
- Attar of roses, 159
- Aubrey, John, 407 (c)
- Aurea Catena Homeri*, 503 (n)
- Aurification, 168, 221, 236, 243–4, 245, 247, 295, 311, 323, 324, 328, 330, 332, 334, 339, 344, 350, 351, 354, 357, 358, 374, 385, 387, 398, 401, 420, 459, 481, 486, 492, 494
 anti-coining edict and, 332
 Arabic. *See* Arabic aurification
 government-supported, 330
 Hellenistic, 336, 337, 351, 355
hu merchants and, 419
 Paracelsus and, 507
- Aurification, 221, 233, 327, 328, 339, 351, 354, 357, 358, 374, 387, 456

- Aurifiction (*cont.*)
 Arabic. *See* Arabic aurifiction
 not the business of alchemists, 505
 Diocletian's proscription of, 332, 340
 Hellenistic, 337, 351, 355
hu merchants and, 419
 Aurifictive papyri, 327
 Auspicious and inauspicious days, 175
 Authentic Statements of the Chhêng brothers of Honan. *See* Honan Chhêng Shih Tshui Yen
 Autolysis, 205
 Automata, 488–9
 Autopsy, 507
 Avestan texts, 334
 Avicebron. *See* Solomon ben Judah ibn Gabirôl
 Avicenna. *See* Ibn Sînâ
 Avogadro's law, 321
 Axioms, of Pseudo-Democritus, 326
 Ayyûb al-Ruhâwî al-Abraš. *See* Job of Edessa
 Aztecs, 429 (b)
 Azurite, 202, 363
Azymum, 366
- Baalbek, 410
 Babylonian mythology, 296
 Babylonian rim-pots. *See* Mesopotamia, rim-pot stills
 Babylonians, 346, 365
 religion, 426
 Bacon, Francis (+1560 to +1626), 1, 152, 496 (g), 497 (c)
 Bacon, Roger (+1214 to +1292), 297, 368, 492–8, 500, 501, 507, 508
 Bacterial action, 176, 204–5
 Bacteriology, 508
 Bactria, 137, 332, 333, 354, 370, 373, 409, 416, 422, 423, 425, 432 (a)
 Badiana oil, 119 (a)
 Bag made of cloth (*pu tai*), 164
 Baghdad, 411, 425 (d)
 Chinese artisans in, 416
 hospital, 398
 al-Baghdâdi. *See* Ibn Abî Ya'qûb al-Nadîm . . .
al-Bahit stone, 449
 Bahrein, 397
 Baiga people, Central India, 105
 'Bain-marie', 32 (b). *See also* Water-bath
 Bait al-Ḥikma (House of Wisdom, the Academy at Baghdad founded by the Caliph al-Ma'mûn, +830), 411
 al-Bakhtîshû', Jûrjîs (Christian Syrian physician, d. c. +771), 411
 Baking powder, 180 (j)
 al-Bâlabakkî. *See* Qustâ ibn Lûqâ . . .
 Balance (weighing-machine), 166, 266, 281, 299, 304 (a)
 Balance, theory of the, 461, 480, 487, 490
 Balance of cosmic forces, as a paradigm of eternity, 236
 Balance of the letters. *See* Mûzân al-hurûf
 Balazs, E. (1), 134
 Balinâs (Apollonius), 369, 373, 399, 425, 457, 461, 463, 472 (c), 486, 492
 Balkh, 333, 370, 409, 416, 422, 423, 424, 425
 al-Balkhî. *See* Ibn Sahl . . . and Ja'far al-Balkhî . . .
 Ball-and-link convention, in representation of asterisms, 313, 428
 Balsam, 83, 207 (b)
 Baluchistan, 439
 Bamboo tubing, 56, 87, 118
 used in solubilisation reactions, 97, 163–4, 168, 172, 179
 value of, 56 (c)
 Vietnamese, multiple, for drinking wine from a common pot, 165 (a)
 Bangladesh, 105
Baphica (On Dyeing), 311, 325
 Bar Bahlul (encyclopaedist, c. +980), 437 (a), 447, 448 (a), 450
 Bar Hebraeus. *See* Abû al-Faraj al-Malaṭî
 Bar Sauma. *See* Rabbân Bar Sauma
 Bar Serapion. *See* Luka bar Serapion
 Bar Shakko. *See* Severus bar Shakko
 al-Barmaki. *See* Ibn Khallikân
 'Barmecide feast', 424 (g)
 Barnes, W. H. (1), 1
 Barrel-guns, 56 (c)
 Bartholinus, Thomas (Danish physician, fl. +1661), 153–4
Bârûd, 194 (e)
 St Basil (d. +379), 60, 95
 'Basil Valentine'. *See* Thôlde, Johann
 Basilides (Gnostic theologian, +3rd. cent.), 377 (a), 385 (e)
 al-Bâṣrî. *See* Ibn Wahb . . .
 Battle of the Talas River, 416, 451
 Becher, Johann J. (chemist, +1635 to +1682), 455
 Beckmann, Johann (historian of science and technology, fl. +1786), 433
 Bed-pans, 86 (a)
 Beer, 93, 111, 155, 365
 Bees, supposed spontaneous generation of, 488
 Beeswax, 163
 Beetle larvae, as ingredient in solubilisation recipes, 205
 The Beetle and the Sea. *See* Li Hai Chi
 Begram, 414
 Bell, Hanna (1), 110
 Bellows, 16
 Bells, made of *khârsîni*, 431, 432
 Benzene ring, 385
 Berber students, 405
Berchile (or *barjila*), 128 (e)
 Bergman, Torbern (chemist, +1735 to +1784), 321
 Berthelot, Marcellin (chemist and historian of science, 1827 to 1907), 196, 399, 483; (1), 374; (2), 80, 84, 88, 89; (10), 123–4
 Berthelot, M. & Duval, R., 33, 87–8, 415, 430, 436
 Berthelot, M. & Houdas, M. O., 391
 Berthelot, M. & Ruelle, C. E., 473
 Berthollet, C. L. (chemist, +1748 to 1822), 433

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

INDEX

699

- Bertrand, Gabriel (1), 209
 Berzelius, J. J. (chemist, +1779 to 1848), 321, 455
 Bestiaries, 313
Bhaiṣajya-ratnāvalī (Jewel Necklace of Materia Medica), 132
Bhasmas, 353
Bhilis. See Tribal peoples
 Biblical apocrypha and pseudepigrapha, 346
 Bibliography of the Sciences. See *Fihrist al-'Ulūm*
 Bicarbonate, 180
 Bidez, J. & Cumont, F., 333, 334, 335
 Bihar, 105
 tribal people in, 97
 Biochemistry, 384
 Biographies of Eminent Men. See *Kitāb Wafayāt al-'A'yān*
 Biological conception of the mineral world, 363
 Biology, 488
 taxonomy in, 277
 'Bird-droppings alum', 203
 Birinuccio, Vanuccio (metallurgist, +1480 to +1539), 98
 Birth, terms for, in Greek and in Chinese, 363
 al-Birūnī, Abū al-Raiḥān Muḥammad ibn Aḥmad (geographer, +973 to +1048), 425
 Bishr ibn Marwān (Governor of Basra, d. +694), 475
 Biskra (Algeria), 130
 al-Bīstāmī, Ibn Muḥammad (writer on the imitation of gems, +12th century), 451 (f)
 'Black-and-Yellow' recipe, 256–7
 Blackening, 9, 348
 Blackness, and the derivation of 'chem-', 347–8
 Bladder still-head cooler, 92, 93
 'Blanching', 405
 Blast-furnace, 16, 20
 Bleaching, 180, 315
 Blemmydes, Nicephoras (Byzantine alchemical writer, +13th cent.), 328, 473 (h)
 Blomfield, Wm. (alchemical writer, +1557), 248
 Blood, 497
 alkalinity of, 446
 in artificial generation processes, 487
 as ingredient in solubilisation recipes, 205
 -letting, 496 (g), 497 (f)
 menstrual, 367
 'Bloomefields Blossoms', 248 (a)
 Bochartus, S. (+1692), 347
 Bodde, D. (5), 307
 Bodhisattvas, 413, 489
 rebirths of, 396
 de le Boë, Franciscus. See Sylvius, Franciscus
 Boerhaave, Hermann (chemical physician, +1668 to +1738), 1, 368
 Boilers, 40
 Boils, 439, 442
 Bokhara, 370, 409, 416, 422, 423, 439
 Bolus of Mendes, the Democritean (*fl. c. –175*), 311–2, 325–7, 329, 330, 333, 334, 387, 395, 471
 Boni, B. (3), 339
 Book of Abstractions. See *Kitāb al-Mujarradāt*
 Book of Accidents. See *Kitāb al-'Arād*
 Book of the Aim of the Sage. See *Kitāb Ghāyat al-Hakim*
 Book of Alums and Salts, 366,
 Book of the Anima and the Animate. See *Kitāb al-Nafs wa'l-Manfūs*
 Book of Animals. See *Kitāb al-Hayawān*
 Book of the Animus. See *Kitāb al-Rūh*
 Book of the Animus and the (Science of the) Balance. See *Kitāb al-Rūh fi'l-Mawāzīn*
 Book of the Arena of the Intelligence. See *Kitāb Maydān al-'Aql*
 Book of Arts. See *Tien Shu*
 Book of Asfidūs on the Wisdom of Aflārūs, 415 (f)
 Book of the Assembly. See *Kitāb al-Jamā'a*
 Book of the Assembly of Medical Simples. See *Kitāb al-Jāmi' fi al-Adwiya al-Mufrada*
 Book of Astronomical Tables based on the *Brāhmaṇaśūtra Siddhānta*. See *Kitāb al-Sindhind*
 Book of Attainment. See *Kitāb al-Balāgha*
 Book of Blood. See *Kitāb al-Dam*
 Book of the Brilliant Stone and the Preparation of the Elixir. See *Kitāb al-Jauhar al-Nadīr fi Ṣinā'at al-Iksir*
 Book of Canakya on Poisons and Theriaca. See *Kitāb Shānāq . . .*
 Book of Changes. See *I Ching*
 Book of Chēmēs, 340–1, 345, 348
 Book of Completion (Egyptian), 348
 Book of the Concentration. See *Kitāb al-Tajmi*
 Book of Concession. See *Kitāb al-Taṣrif*
 Book of the Controversies and Conferences of the Philosophers, 399
 Book of Crates the Wise. See *Kitāb Qarāṭis al-Hakim*
 Book of the Dead (Egyptian), 375 (f)
 Book of Dialogues (Severus bar Sebokht), 430 (b)
 Book (of Dialogues) of Mary the Copt with the Philosophers who assembled at her House, 399
 Book of Divine Grace. See *Kitāb al-Lāhūt*
 Book of the Eastern Mercury. See *Kitāb al-Zibaq al-Sharqi*
 Book of Eggs. See *Kitāb al-Bayd*
 Book of Enlightenment . . . See *Kitāb al-Idāh al-Ma'rūf bi-Thalāthīn Kalima*
 Book of Enoch, 341 ff., 386 (e), 450 (b)
 Book of Evidences. See *Kitāb al-Shawāhid*
 Book of the Fading-like-Grass Master. See *Tshao Mu Tzu*
 Book of the Fifth Nature. See *Kitāb al-Tabī'a al-Khāmīsa*
 Book of the Fifty. See *Kitāb al-Khamisin*
 Book of the Filter. See *Kitāb al-Rāwūq*
 Book of the Five Viziers of the King of India. See *Kitāb al-Wuzarā' al-Khamsa li-Malik al-Hind*
 Book of the Friend. See *Kitāb al-Habib*
 Book of the Giants (Manichaean), 343 (c)

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

700

INDEX

- Book of Gold. See *Kitāb al-Dhabab*
 Book of Government. See *Kitāb al-Hukūma*
 Book of Hair. See *Kitāb al-Sha'ar*
 Book of the Hermit. See *Kitāb al-Rāhib*
 Book of the Hidden Secret. See *Kitāb al-Sirr al-Makmūn*
 Book of the Image of the Earth. See *Kitāb Sūrat al-Ard*
 Book of Introductions. See *Kitāb al-Muqaddimāt*
 Book of Job (O.T.), 367
 Book for Kings. See *Kitāb al-Malaki*
 Book of Knowledge acquired concerning the Cultivation of Gold. See *Kitāb al-'Ilm al-Muktasab fi Zirā'at al-Dhabab*
 Book of Knowledge in General. See *Kitāb al-Ma'arif*
 Book of the Letter of Ja'far al-Ṣadiq on the Science of the Art and the Noble Stone. See *Kitāb Risāla al-Ṣadiq fi 'Ilm al-Ṣanā'a wa'l-Hajar al-Mukarram*
 Book of Life. See *Muṣṭaf al-Hayāt*
 Book of the Living. See *Kitāb al-Hayy*
 Book of Master Chi Ni. See *Chi Ni Tzu*
 Book of Master Chuang. See *Chuang Tzu*
 Book of Master Kuan. See *Kuan Tzu*
 Book of Medicines (Syriac), 473 (j)
 Book of Metallurgic and Chymeutic (Art), 350
 Book of the Most Glorious Treasure and Greatest Secret on the Transmutation of the Philosopher's Stone. See *Kitāb al-Kanz al-Aṣḥar* . . .
 Book of Natural Figures. See *Kitāb al-Ashkāl al-Tabi'iyya*
 Book on the Necessity of Alchemy. See *Kitāb fi Wujūb Ṣinā'at al-Kimiya*'
 Book of Odes. See *Shih Ching*
 Book on Ores, Electuaries and Chinese Clay. See *Kitāb al-Suyūb wa'l-Ma'jūnāt wa'l-Ghadār*
 Book of the Passage from Potentiality to Actuality. See *Kitāb Ikhraj mā fi'l-Quarwa ilā'l-Fi'l*
 Book of Perfume Chemistry and Distillations. See *Kitāb Kīmiyā' al-'Itr w'al-Taṣ'idāt*
 Book of Plants. See *Kitāb al-Nabāt*
 Book of Poisons. See *Kitāb al-Sumūm*
 Book of Poisons and Antidotes. See *Kitāb al-Sumūm wa-daf' Madāriḥā*
 Book of the Preservation-of-Solidarity Master. See *Pao Phu Tzu*
 Book of the Priests. See *Liber Sacerdotum*
 Book of (the Prince of) Huai Nan. See *Huai Nan Tzu*
 Book of Properties. See *Kitāb al-Khawāṣṣ* . . .
 Book of Proverbs (O.T.), 179
 Book of Putrefaction. See *Kitāb al-Ta'fin*
 Book of the Realm of Kēng and Hsin. See *Kēng Hsin Ching*
 Book of the Rectifications of Harbi. See *Kitāb Muṣāḥḥāt Ḥarbi*
 Book of the Reduction. See *Kitāb al-Talkhiṣ*
 Book of the Religious and Civil Authority. See *Kitāb al-Imāma wa'l-Siyāsa*
 Book of the Remedy. See *Kitāb al-Shifa'*
- Book of the Rending of Veils. See *Kitāb Hatch al-Astār*
 Book of the Repose of the Animi. See *Kitāb Rawḥ al-Arwāḥ*
 Book of the Result. See *Kitāb al-Hāsil*
 Book of Roads and Provinces. See *Kitāb al-Masālik wa'l-Mamālik*
 Book of Royalty. See *Kitāb al-Mulk*
 Book of the Sage's Step. See *Kitāb Rutbat al-Ḥakīm*
 Book of the Search. See *Kitāb al-Bāḥث*
 Book of the Secret of Creation and the Art (of reproducing) Nature. See *Kitāb Sirr al-Khalīqa wa Ṣan'at al-Tabī'a*
 Book of the Secret of Secrets. See *Kitāb Sirr al-Asrār*
 Book of the Secrets of the Sun and Moon. See *Kitāb Asrār al-Shams wa'l-Qamar*
 Book of the Selection of the Age. See *Kitāb Nukhbāt al-Dahr*
 Book of the Seven Chimes. See *Kitāb al-Ashkāl*
 Book of the Seven Idols. See *Kitāb al-Asnām al-Sab'a*
 Book of the Silvery Water and the Starry Earth. See *Kitāb al-Mā' al-Waraqī wa'l-Ard al-Najmiya*
 Book of the Stone. See *Kitāb al-Hajar*
 Book of the Sum and Substance. See *Kitāb al-Jāmi'*
 Book of the Surprising. See *Kitāb al-Bāhit*
 Book of Testing, or of Coinage. See *Kitāb al-Naqd*
 Book of the Thousands. See *Kitāb al-Ulūf*
 Book of the Treasures (Job of Edessa), 370
 Book of the Treasury of Precious Things. See *Kitāb al-Dhakhā'ir* . . .
 Book of Urine. See *Kitāb al-Bawl*
 Book of Uṣṭānis, 335
 Book of Warning. See *Risālat al-Ḥadhar*
 Book of Washing. See *Kitāb al-Ghasl*
 Book of the Western Mercury. See *Kitāb al-Zibaq al-Gharbi*
 Books of the Balances. See *Kutub al-Mawāzin*
 Books, burning of, 340
 Books of the Seven Metals. See *Kutub al-Ajsad al-Sab'a*
 Books of the White and the Yellow, 357
 Borates, 193
 Boraxes, 262, 373, 395
Bōshō. See *Mang hsiao*
Bot-bar-bot ('the crucible and the son of the crucible'), 33, 55 (e), 430
Botus barbatus, 33
 Boucher, Wm., 142 (c)
 Bourke, J. G. (1), 106, 108; (2), 109
 Box-bellows (*fēng hsiang*), 16
 Boyle, Robert (chemist +1627 to +1691), 153, 154, 179, 202, 408 (a), 455
 Brāhmaṇas, 131
 Brahmins, 373, 497, 498 (c)
 Brain-disturbances, 446
 The Brand of the Fire-Seeker; Procedure of Hermes of the line of Hermes. See *Qabas*

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

INDEX

701

- The Brand of the Fire-Seeker (*cont.*)
al-Qābis fī Tadbir Hirmis al-Harāmīsa
Brandy, 133, 136, 140, 149, 157–8
Branntwein, 133
Brasavola, Antonius (physician and pharmacist, +1500 to +1555), 199
Brass-making, 435
Brasses
 corrosion of, 315
 gold-like, 358
‘Brave New World’ (Huxley), 487
Brazil, stills in, 115
Bread-making, 27, 365, 405
Breath control, and breathing exercises, 212, 233 (f), 249, 265, 268, 270, 372, 420
Brethren of Sincerity, 376 (h), 397, 402
Breviary of Marvels. See *Mukhtaṣar al-‘Aja‘ib*
Brewers, and brewing, 70, 135
 monopoly, 147
Brine deposits, 193
British Museum, 53, 57
 Eumorphopoulos Collection, 383
Brock, Sebastian, 430 (b)
Bromine, 384
Bromo-naphthalene, 102
Bronze, 189
 coins, 320
 corrosion of, 315
 high tin, 358
 ornaments, 381, 383
 reaction-vessels, 21
Browne, Sir Thomas (+1605 to +1682), 152, 367–8, 376 (d)
Bruises, 149
Bruman, H. J. (1, 3), 110
Brunschwyk, Hieronymus (c. +1500), 87, 93, 94
Bryant, P.L. (1), 47, 48, 49
Bubbling-Spring fire phasing system, 284–5
Bubbling technique, 165–6
Buch, M. (1), 112
Buchner funnel, 98
Buddha, rebirths of, 396
‘Buddha fingers’, 145 (f)
Buddha Vaidyārāja Sūtra. See *Fo Shuo Fo I Wang Ching*
Buddhism, 336, 370, 377, 385, 388, 413–4, 416
 hells in, 420
 monks of, 147
Buddhist China through the Ages. See *Li Tai San Pao Chi*
Buddhist medical texts, translations into Chinese, 336
Buddleia madagascarensis, 111
Budge, Wallis, 349
Bundahishn, 439 (c)
Bungs, history of, 143 (e)
Buqrātīs (Hippocrates), 313 (g), 427 (c)
al-Burhān fī ‘Ilm Asrār ‘Ilm al-Mizān (Proofs of the Secret Science of the Balance), 404
Burials, in Sinkiang and Shensi, 416
Buriat Mongols, 104, 105
Burkitt, F. C. 377 (a), 386
Burma, and the Burmese, 418, 468 (f)
Burns, Robert, 434 (j)
‘Burnt spring wine’ (*shao chhun chiu*), 142
‘Burnt wine’, 133, 135, 143, 145, 156
‘Burnt-wine Method of the Southern Tribesfolk’, 112
Bushell, S. W. (2), 28
‘The business of alchemy is not to make gold but to prepare medicines’, 505
Butte, Montana, 201
Byogaku Tsiron (Survey of Pathology), 502 (c)
Byron, Lord, 154
Byzantine Greek, 352, 354
 manuscripts, 123–4
Byzantine proto-chemists, 178
 alcohol and, 124
Byzantines
 distilling of essential oils, 158
 elixir idea among, 500
 magic square, 464
Byzantium, 121, 329, 337, 400
 Arab envoy at, 391
 Patriarch of, 501
Cadmium, 358
Caerulean Dragon, 420
Cairo Library, 415
Caius, John, 121, 497 (c)
Calabash, 217
Calcination, 8
Calcium, 181, 295
 acetate, 178
 chloride, 440
 oxide, 295
 polysulphides, 126, 175, 335, 356, 367, 402
 sulphate, 20, 171, 176, 201
 sulphide, 176
Calculation, with divining chart, 471
Caliphate, 397, 424
Callinicus (c. +670), 121, 329
Calomel, 47, 174, 320, 353, 402
Calx, 374
Cambridge Platonists, 502
‘Camel’s skull’, 198
Cammann, S. van R., 462; (7, 8, 12), 463
Campaigns by Chinese armies, 423
Camphor, 315, 395
 crystals, 47, 48
 sublimation, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 55
Camphor oil, 47, 48
 purifying of, 49
Canizzaro, Stanislas (chemist, 1826 to 1910), 321
Cannabis, 213, 245
Canon of Medicine. See *Qānūn fī al-Tibb*
Canon of the Virtue of the Tao. See *Tao Tê Ching*
Canton, 148, 351
 merchants, 417
 supposed tomb of Sa‘d ibn abi-Waqqās at, 416
 water-pipes from, 165
Cantonese dialect, 351
Capitalism, 314 (b)
Caracosmos, 142 (c)

- Caraka Samhita*, 429 (d)
 Carbamino-phenylarsonic acid, 192
 Carbasone, 192
 Carbon, 295
 Carbon-nitrogen cycle, 384
 Cartesian system, 321
 Cartography, 292
 Caspian Sea, 408
 Cassia, oil of, 113
 Cassianus, John (patristic writer, c. +428), 346
 Cassius Dionysius (writer, fl. —88), 325
 Cast iron, 203, 243, 289, 354, 451
 cauldrons, 18
 melting of, 16
 pan (*kuo*), 167
 Catalogue of Ancient Mirrors (and Bronzes of the Imperial Collection in the Library of Western Serenity. *See Hsi Chhing Ku Chien*)
 Catalogue of the Yellow and the White (Pseudo-Democritus), 357
 Catalonia, 494
 Catalysis, 174, 175, 177, 365, 384
 Catch-bowl of the Chinese still, 63 ff., 146, 147, 155
 Catechol, 209
 Catechol-oxidase, 209
 Category theories, 299, 305 ff., 360–1, 471, 503
 and the 'state' of matter, 314
 old applications of, 316–7
 Cathartic-diuretics, 181, 189 (f)
 Cathay, and Cathayan, 432
Catholicon Physicorum (Samuel Norton, +1630), 318 (c)
 Caucasus, 507
 Causality and causation, 277, 308–9
 mechanical, 323
 Causes and effects, 395
 Caustic alkalies, 128 (b), 181, 195 (d)
 Cave legends. *See* Underground repositories
 Cave-temples, 66, 67
 Cave of the Treasures, legend cycle, 369 (c)
Cédratine, 145
 Celestial Masters (*thien shih*), 220
 Celestial sphere, 487
 Cell-division, 366
 Celsus (Epicurean philosopher, c. +178), 378
 Cement, 20
 for glass and porcelain, 451, 452
 Cementation, 402
 Central Asia, 157, 469
 Central Asian conquests, 416, 451
 Central nervous system, stimulation of, 442
 Centrifuge, 205
 Ceramics, 1
 Ceration, 8, 9, 435
 Cereal food, 419
 Cereal grains, 141–2
 wine or beer from, 138–9, 149, 155, 157, 162
 vodka-like spirits from, 64
 Ceremonies. *See* Rites and ceremonies
 Cerularius, Michael (Byzantine Patriarch, +11th century), 501 (e)
 Ceylon, 486
 Chain reactions, 384
 Chaldaeans, 370, 409
 religion, 426
 science and pseudo-science, 334
 Chalk, 175
Chalkion (still-head), 84, 88
 Cham. *See Ham*
 Champa, King of, 158, 161
 Champollion, J. F., 347
 Chang Chhien (traveller and explorer, fl. —138 to —126), 137, 332, 354, 370, 387
 Chang Chün-Fang (Taoist editor, c. +1022), 3
 Chang Héng (astronomer and mathematician, +78 to +139), 246, 464 (k)
 Chang Hsüan-Tê (Thang alchemist), 253
 Chang Hua (writer, +232 to +300), 151, 207, 309, 314
 Chang Hung-Chao (I), 182, 445, 446
 Chang I (lexicographer, c. +230), 33
 Chang Khuang-Yeh (Chinese envoy, c. +981), 442
 Chang Kuo (alchemical writer, early +8th century), 2
 Chang Po-Tuar. (alchemical writer) (+983 to +1082), 3, 319
 Chang Shih-Nan (writer on the distillation of the essential oils of citrus flowers, +1233), 160–1, 190, 191
 Chang Sui (alchemist), 12, 17
 Chang Tao-Ling (Taoist Patriarch, +2nd century), 217, 397 (a)
 Chang Tzu-Kung, 352; (1), 370, 372
 Chang Yuan-Yu (alchemist, +555), 380
 Chang Yüeh (Thang writer, +695), 140
 Change, concept of, 221–3, 229, 322, 379, 461.
 See also Chemical change, Substantial change, Spontaneous change
 'Changer' (Hua Jen), 413–4
 Chao Hsüeh-Min (pharmacist, +1760), 175
 Chao Ju-Kua (geographer, c. +1225), 149, 417
 Chao-ku, Honan
 tomb at, 29
 Chao Nai-An (Thang alchemical writer, +808), 3, 18 (b), 283, 294, 295
 Chaos, 250, 252, 253–4, 255, 258, 261, 293 (g)
 and the egg, 292 ff., 366
 and the reaction vessel, 250, 292
 Charcoal, and absorption of grease, 315
 Charcoal-burning, 55 (e)
 Charcoal hygrometer, 314
 Charlatanism, 405, 408
 Charles V (King of Spain, r. +1516 to +1555), 109
 Charleton, Walter (Paracelsian physician and natural philosopher, +1620 to +1707), 502 (j)
 Charms, 311, 312
 for pregnancy and childbirth, 463
 See also Talismans
 Charsada (ancient city of Pushkalāvati), 86
 Chartres, School of, 491 (d)

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

INDEX

703

- Cheese, analogised with the development of embryos, 367
Cheiromēta (Manipulations based on Sympathies and Antipathies), 311, 325, 341
 'Chem —', 345, 346 ff., 474
Chēmeia, 351, 352, 355, 365, 388
Chémēs (or Chymēs), 340, 343, 344, 346
Chēmeutics, 375
 Chemical affinities, 306, 322, 361, 471
 electro-chemical theory of, 455
 tables of, 322
 Chemical apparatus, 449
 modern, 98, 111
 Chemical categories, table of, 319–20
 Chemical change, 298, 309, 374, 394, 414
 cyclical processes in, 362
 Chemical combination, 308, 321, 361
 Chemical discovery and invention, 323
 Chemical industry, 40, 178
 Chemical operations, 481
 as symbolic rituals or natural magic, 387
 Chemical purity, 48 (c)
 Chemical reactions, 251, 261, 388, 471
 and analogy of sexual union, 363–4
 Chemical reagents, 388, 435, 478
 classified in categories, 317
 Chemical substances
 numerologically ‘quantitative’ analysis of elements and qualities in, 373
 sexuality of, 400
 used in Arabic artificial generation procedures, 480, 490
 Chemical technology, 280, 298, 308, 318, 339
 Chinese priority in, 76
 modern, 98
 in papyri, 345
 Chemicals, from Sian, 26
 Chemistry, 226, 230, 255, 311, 323, 380, 507, 508
 Egyptian. *See* Egypt
 empirical phase of, 502
 first occurrence of the term, 339–45
 Indian. *See* India
 invention of, 413
 Islamic. *See* Islam
 and medicine, 491
 modern, 153, 154, 172, 176, 199, 210, 275–6,
 288, 298, 301, 321, 366, 384, 455, 507
 organic, 368, 385
 and physics, distinction between, 298
 Chemo-therapy, 393, 491, 503
Chen Hsi (The Legitimate Succession of Perfected Immortals), 213 (b)
Chen Kao (Declarations of the Perfected (or Realised) Immortals), 213 (b), 215–6, 256 (a), 269
Chen Luan (mathematician, fl. c. +560), 464 (a)
Chen Yuan Miao Tao Yao Lüeh (Classified Essentials of the Mysterious Tao of the True Origin of Things), 187, 197 (c), 294 (g)
 Chenchu jungle people. *See* Tribal peoples
Chêng Chhien (pharmaceutical writer, +8th century), 421
Chêng Ho (admiral, +15th century), 61
Chêng-I denomination of Taoism, 249
Chêng Lei Pén Tshao (Reorganised Pharmacopoeia), 59, 205, 206, 207, 300
Chêng liu ('steaming', term for distillation), 97, 132
Chêng lung (steamers for cooking), 146
Chêng Tê-Khun (9), 28
Chêng-Thung Tao Tsang (Taoist Patrology of the Chêng-Thung reign-period, +1445), 291
Chêngchow, cast-iron cauldrons, 18
Chenoboskion. *See* Nag Hammadi
 Chess, 464, 468 (b)
Chhan Wei shu (Apocryphal Classics), 468 (d)
Chhang-an (mod. Sian), 185, 387, 418, 420
Chhang Ku Chi (The Chhang-Ku Collection of Poems), 143
Chhangchow, tomb-model of stove from, 31
Chhangsha
 'rainbow vessels' from, 50, 51, 53
 tomb-model of stove from, 31
Chhao Kung-Wu (Sung bibliographer, d. +1171), 249
Chhen (pictograph), 381
Chhen Chih-Hsü (Yuan alchemical writer, +1333), 3, 319
Chhen Kung-Jou (3), 14
Chhen Kuo-Fu (I), 256
Chhen Shao-Wei (Thang alchemical writer, perhaps c. +712), 2, 15, 55, 237, 241–2, 262, 263, 270, 271–2, 273, 274, 276, 277, 278, 279, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304
Chhen Ta-Shih (Sung alchemist and poet, +11th century), 261
Chhen Thuan (Taoist scholar, +895 to +989), 380, 464, 468
Chhen Tshang-Chhi (pharmaceutical naturalist, +725), 440
Chhenchow, 300
Chhêng (or *tang*, a vessel used for warming wine), 167
Chhêng I (Neo-Confucian philosopher, +1033 to +1107), 299
Chhêng Wei (Han alchemist, fl. –95 or c. –20), 330, 357
 wife of, 364
Chhêngtu Historical Museum, 163, 164
Chhi (pneuma, subtle matter, matter-energy), 210, 222, 224–5, 227–8, 229, 230 (a), 240, 257, 282–3, 293, 316, 361, 362, 371, 388, 497
 circulation of, 297
Chhi (State), 329
Chhi Fan Ling Sha Ko (Song of the Sevenfold Cyclically Transformed Cinnabar Elixir), 309 (a)
Chhi Fan Ling Sha Lun (On Numinous Cinnabar Seven Times Cyclically Transformed), 237 (a), 270–1, 272
Chhi kuo (cooking apparatus), 116, 120
Chhi Man Tshung Hsiao (Amusing Anecdotes of the Chhi Man Tribesfolk, in Southern Hunan), 146

- Chhi Min Yao Shu* (Important Arts for the People's Welfare), 135
Chhi yao books, 427 (f)
Chhieh Yün (literary dictionary), 440
Chhien Chin Yao Fang (Thousand Golden Remedies), 162
Chhien Han Shu (History of the Early Han Dynasty), 307
Chhien-hsi shui (aqueous solution of lead), 170
Chhien Hung Chia Kéng Chih Pao Chi Chhêng (Complete Compendium on the Perfected Treasure of Lead, Mercury, Wood and Metal), 3, 18, 264 (a), 281, 283, 294
Chhien-kung shui (aqueous solution of lead), 170
Chhien-shan district, 201, 204
Chhien Shu kingdom, 421
Chhh Fu (temple librarian skilled in alchemy), 185
Chhh Hsü Tzu (Red-Beard Master), 440 (c)
Chhh Sung Tzu (Red Pine-tree Master). *See* Huang Chhu-Phing
Chhin (dynasty), 76, 79, 133, 329–30
 amalgamation silvering, 57
 steamer vessels, 30
Chhin Lun (Roman-Syrian merchant-envoy, +226), 332
Chhin Shih Huang Ti (the First Emperor, r. –221 to –209), 329
Chhinchow (Szechuan), 185
Chhing (dynasty), 331
 imperial collection of books, 51
Chhing chiu ('pure' or 'plain' wine), 144, 146
Chhing fan shih shui (aqueous solution of green vitriol (copperas) or ferrous sulphate), 173
Chhing Hsia Tzu (chemical writer, c. +918), 259, 293, 441
Chhing I Lu (Records of the Unworldly and the Strange), 159
Chhing Po Tsa Chih (Green-Waves Memories), 204
Chhing yen (blue salt; rock salt), 20
Chhiu shih (autumn mineral), 309 (c) on 310
Chhü (ferment), 135, 136, 138, 139, 157
Chhü Hsien (the Emaciated Immortal). *See* Chu Chhüan
Chhü Pén Tshao (Natural History of Yeasts and Fermentations), 144–5
Chhüan-chen, Taoist denomination, 220
Chhun Chhiu Fan Lu (String of Pearls on the Spring and Autumn Annals), 286, 307, 311
Chhun Chhiu Wei Yuan Ming Pao (Apocryphal Treatise on the 'Spring and Autumn Annals'; the Mystical Diagrams of Cosmic Destiny), 252 (b)
Chi-Chi hexagram, 5 (c), 70, 79
Chi-chi lu ('perfect-accomplishment' stove), 37, 43, 68, 70, 71, 72, 73, 284, 285
Chi Ni Tzu (Book of Master Chi Ni), 174 (a), 184, 197 (a), 298 (b)
Chi tiao (fabulous kind of dragon), 198
Chi tshai kuan (cooking vessel), 29, 30
Chia-chia-chuang Commune, Shansi spirits still at, 65, 66
Chia-ko-chuang, 381
 bronze *tui* from, 23
Chia-Yu Pén Tshao (Pharmaceutical Natural History of the Chia-Yu reign-period), 179 (b)
Chiang Shu-Mao (Taoist elixir-maker, Chhin period), 330
Chiangsi, 204
 sublimation-distillation apparatus in, 47
Chiangsu Provincial Museum, Nanking, 30–1
Chiao kou (chemical technical term for reaction), 364
Chicha, 110 (a)
Chien (natron), 180
Chien ('fur' or 'boiler scale'), 181
Chien-nan, 142
Chih Chen Tzu Lung Hu Ta Tan Shih (Song of the Great Dragon and Tiger Enchymoma of the Perfected Master), 309 (b)
Chih-Chhien (translator of Buddhist medical texts, +230), 336
Chih-Chhuan Chen-Jen Chiao Chêng Shu (Technical Methods of the Adept (Ko) Chih-Chhuan, with Critical Annotations), 3, 72, 155, 285 (g), 293
Chih Fa-Lin (Thang pharmaceutical naturalist, +664), 186, 187
Chih Kuei Chi (Pointing the Way Home) to Life Eternal; a Collection), 233
Chih plants, 217
 Childbirth, charms and talismans for, 205, 463, 469 (b)
 Children's diseases, 62
 Chiliasm, 396
Chimia in Artis Formam Redacta (Rolphinck), 350
Chin (dynasty), 33, 71, 72, 133, 134, 295, 309
 still, 148
Chin (*kim*, gold), and the origin of 'chem–', 351–5, 474
 pronunciation of the word, 352
Chin Hua Chhung Pi Tan Ching Pi Chih (Confidential Instructions on the Manual of the Heaven-piercing Golden Flower Elixir), 3, 22, 34, 36, 43, 244 (c), 275, 276, 285, 292, 322
Chin i (potable gold, or gold juice), 352–3
Chin I Ching (Manual of Potable Gold), 353
Chin Ling Tzu (alchemical writer, probably Sung), 3
Chin Pi Ching (Gold and Caerulean Jade Manual), 249
Chin Pi Wu Hsiang Lei Tshan Thung Chhi (Gold and Caerulean Jade Treatise on the Similarities and Categories of the Five Substances and the 'Kinship of the Three'), 309 (c)
Chin Shih Pu Wu Chiu Shu Chüeh (Explanation of the Inventory of Metals and Minerals according to the Numbers Five (Earth) and Nine (Metal) . . .), 186
Chin Shih Wu Hsiang Lei. *See* Yin Chen Chüin
Chin Shih Wu Hsiang Lei
Chin Tan Chin Pi Chhien Thung Chüeh (Oral Instructions Explaining the Abscondite

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

INDEX

705

- Chin Tan Chin Pi Chhien Thung Chüeh* (cont.)
 Truths of the Gold and Caerulean Jade
 Components of the Metallous Enchymoma),
 249 (d)
- Chin Tan Lung Hu Ching* (Gold Elixir Dragon
 and Tiger Manual), 257 (c)
- Chin Tan Pi Yao Tshan Thung Lu* (Essentials of
 the Gold Elixir; Record of the Kinship of
 the Three), 258 (b)
- Chin Tan Ta Yao Thu* (Illustrations for the
 'Main Essentials of the Metallous Enchy-
 moma, the true Gold Elixir'), 3, 13, 17
- Chin ting* ('gold' vessel), 16, 17
- Chinan Provincial Museum, Shantung, 29, 30
- 'Chinese arrow-head metal'. See *Khārsini*
- 'Chinese arsenic', 432 (b)
- 'Chinese clay', 450
- 'Chinese copper', 431 (h)
- 'Chinese flowers', 432 (b)
- Chinese historical writing, 413
- Chinese ink, 296
- 'Chinese iron' (dist. from Seric iron), 430 (d),
 432 (b) and see *Khārsini*
- Chinese and Japanese Universal Encyclopaedia.
 See *Wakan Sanzai Zue*
- Chinese language, 352
- ideographic-alphabetic barrier, 415
- Chinese protectorates in Central Asia, 423
- 'Chinese salt', 450
- 'Chinese snow', 194
- Chinese transliteration of Arabic geographical
 names, 423
- 'Chinese wheel', 432 (b)
- Chirurgia Magna* (Paracelsus), 202 (b)
- Chiu Chuan Chhing Chin Ling Sha Tan* (The
 Ninefold Cyclically Transformed Caerulean
 Golden Numinous Cinnabar Elixir), 264 (a)
- Chiu Chuan Ling Sha Ta Tan* (The Great Nine-
 fold Cyclically Transformed Numinous
 Cinnabar Elixir), 2, 264 (a), 292 (a)
- Chiu Chuan Ling Sha Ta Tan Tzu Shêng Hsüan
 Ching* (Mysterious Sagehood-Enhancing
 Canon of the Great Ninefold Cyclically
 Transformed Cinnabar Elixir), 282 (f)
- Chui Huan Chin Tan Erh Chang* (Two Chapters
 on the Ninefold Cyclically Transformed
 Gold Elixir), 273 (b)
- Chiu Kung*. See Nine Palaces
- Chiu Phu* (A Treatise on Wine), 147
- Chiu Shih* (A History of Wine), 147
- Chiu Yuan Tzu* (+1st-century writer), 331
- Chlorides, 176, 180, 193, 322
 of mercury, 47
- Choice Book of the Revelation of Secrets and the
 Tearing of Veils. See *Kitâb al-Mukhtâr fi
 Kashf al-Asrâr wa-Hathâk al-Astâr*
- Chojiya Heibei (/), 193
- Chopsticks, 163, 167
- Chosroes. See Khosrau
- Chou (period), 97, 118, 217
 amalgamation gilding and silvering, 57
 bronze ornament, 383
- bronze tripod, 82
- inscriptions, 446
- jade rings, 383
- pottery and bronze vessels, 27–8, 30
- reaction-vessels, 23–4, 25
- water-bath, 33
- Chou Chhü-Fei (Sung geographer, +1178), 59,
 79
- Chou Chi-Thung (Taoist elixir-maker, –1st
 century), 331
- Chou Hui (Sung writer, +1193), 204
- Chou I Tshan Thung Chhi Fên Chang Chu Chieh*
 ('The Kinship of the Three and the Book
 of Changes' divided into Chapters, with
 Commentary and Analysis). See *Tshan Thung
 Chhi*
- Chou Li* (Record of Institutions of the Chou
 Dynasty), 30, 84 (b), 329
- Christian magi, 253
- Christian saint, holding an Ouroboros, 384
- Christianity and Christians, 341, 490, 495, 505
 in China, 505
 and immortality, 493
- Nestorian. See Nestorians
- Syrian, 410
- Chronographia* (Malalas), 345 (a)
- Chronographia* (Psellos), 500, 501
- Chronographia* (Syncellos), 339, 341, 346 (k)
- Chronographia* (Theophanes), 345 (a)
- Chronology of the Kings and Prophets of the
 Earth. See *Târikh Sini Mulûk al-Ard wa'l-
 Anbiya'*
- Chrysocoll, 313
- Chrysopoeia* of Ps-Cleopatra, 72, 375
- Chü-chhü, Mt., 213
- Chu Chhüan (Ning Hsien Wang, Prince of the
 Ming, naturalist, metallurgist and alchemist,
 +1390 to +1448), 173, 175, 297
- Chü Chia Pi Yung Shih Lei Chhüan Chi* (Collec-
 tion of Certain Sorts of Techniques necessary
 for Households), 112–3
- Chu Chia Shen Phin Tan Fa* (Methods of the
 Various Schools for Magical Elixir Prepara-
 tions), 3, 15, 175, 186, 257, 258 (b), 260,
 267 (c)
- Chu Fan Chih* (Records of Foreign Peoples and
 their Trade), 149, 161, 417
- Chu Fu (human geographer, c. 1117), 146
- Chu Hsi (Neo-Confucian philosopher, (+1130 to
 +1200), 252
- Chu I-Chung (writer on wine, +1117), 44, 145–6
- Chü-jung, 213
- Chu Kung. See Chu I-Chung
- Chü Lu* (Orange Record), 161
- Chu Tê-Jun (scholar, +1347), 337
- Chu Yeh Thing Tsa Chi* (Miscellaneous Records
 of the Bamboo-Leaf Pavilion), 443, 446
- Chuang Lou Chi* (Records of the Ornamental
 Pavilion), 158 (b)
- Chuang Tzu (Chuang Chou, Taoist philosopher,
 –4th century), 220, 308
- Chuang Tzu* (Book of Master Chuang), 234,

- Chuang Tzu (cont.)*
 341 (h), 462
Chüeh Tung Tzu (Han alchemist, –2nd century),
 380
Chui hun (temperature stabiliser), 44
Chün-hsien (Hsin-tshun), 381
Chung-shan, Prince Ching of. *See* Liu Shêng
Chungking Museum. *See* Szechuan Provincial
 Museum
Chymēs. *See* Chēmēs
Chymical Elaboratory Practice. *See* *Tan Fang*
Hsiü Chih
Cibot, P. M. (Jesuit, c. 1780) (5), 149, 155
Cinnabar, 9, 15, 40, 45, 54, 79, 80, 175, 176, 177,
 184, 185, 216, 217, 225, 226, 228, 230, 232,
 234, 247, 257, 258, 260, 261, 287, 288, 289,
 290, 295, 297, 298, 300, 314, 315, 317, 320,
 330, 356, 456, 458, 459, 498
 consumption of, 185, 303
 converted to mercury, 45
 coupling with lead ores, 232, 233
 creek-, 238, 240
 crystalline varieties of, 241, 296, 300–1, 302
 earthy, 238, 240, 303
 four varieties of, 301–2
 associated with gold deposits, 233
 horse-tooth, 301, 302, 303
 ‘lustrous’, 241, 242, 300, 301–2, 303
 mercury yields from, 301, 303, 304
 metamorphoses of, 255
 purification of, 177
 purple numinous, 302, 303
 range of qualities, 236–40, 303
 solubilisation of, 168, 170, 172, 175, 186–7
 subduing of, 270–1, 303
 superior translucent, 302
 supra-normal formations of, 242
 throne formations of, 237–41
‘Cinnabar’ sublimate, 261
Cinnamon, 171, 315, 452
Cinnamomum Cassia, 113
Circulation systems, 41, 282
 of the blood, 384 (j)
 meteorological, 384 (j)
Citrititas. *See* Yellow and yellowing
Citrus flowers, essential oils of, 160, 161
 fruits, 160
 liqueurs containing, 145
‘Ciugui’ (Marco Polo’s name for yogi). *See* Yogis
Classifications, 277
 of drugs, 237 (e)
 in Jâbirian and Arabic alchemy, 395
 al-Râzî’s, of naturally occurring substances, 398
Classified Essentials of the Mysterious Tao of the
True Origin (of Things). *See* *Chen Yuan*
Miao Tao Yao Lüeh
Classified Records from Dragon River. *See* *Lung*
Chhuan Lieh Chi
Classless society, 397
Clauder, Gabriel (chemical physician, +1633 to
 +1691), 499 (f)
Claudianon (gold-like brassy alloy), 326
Claudius (Roman emperor, r. +41 to +54), 326
Clay, 320
 Cleaning of metal surfaces, 441
Clement of Alexandria (c. +200), 346
Clement IV (Pope, c. +1266), 492
Cleopatra. *See* *Pseudo-Cleopatra*
Clepsydra, 167
 Climate, as a factor in longevity, 507
 Clouds, prognostication by, 342
 Cloves, 159
 Clusters, of transmissions, 157 (c)
Co-fusion steel, 189 (a)
 Coagulation, 8, 9
Coal, 200
 poisonous fumes from, 314
Coal-seams, and sal ammoniac, 437, 438, 442–3
Coconut, 110
Coffin Texts (Egyptian), 376
Coins
 Arab, 416
 Bactrian, 373
 bronze, 320
 copper, 203
 gold, 337, 408
 silver, 336, 337, 408
Thang, 416
Coitus, 497
Colander, 28, 97
 ‘Cold-finger’ still types. *See* *Stills*
 ‘Cold-stills’, 126
Colima culture, Mexico, 109, 110 (b)
Collected Commentaries on the Pharmacopoeia...
See *Pén Tshao Ching Chi Chu*
Collected Conversations at Iron-Fence Mountain.
See *Thieh Wei Shan Tshung Than*
Collection of Certain Sorts of Techniques
 necessary for Households. *See* *Chu Chai Pi*
Yung Shih Lei Chhiuan Chi
Collection of Histories. *See* *Jāmi’ al-Tawârikh*
Collection of the Most Important Military Tech-
niques. *See* *Wu Ching Tsung Yao*
Collection of Procedures on the Golden Art. *See*
Kêng Tao Chi
Collection of Ten Tractates and Treatises on the
Regeneration of the Primary Vitalities. *See*
Hsiu Chen Shih Shu
 Colour-changes, 351
 Colour correspondences, 287, 288–9, 427–8
 Coloured precipitates, 175
 Colouring processes, 311, 342
 falsification and, 332
 Colours
 associated with spatial directions, 360
 prepared from living things, 35c
 of surface-films, 358
Columella (Roman agricultural writer), 433
Comarius (+2nd-century Hellenistic proto-
 chemist), 327, 333, 387
Combinations
 of like with like, 318–9, 321, 322
 of opposites, 321
Combinatorial analysis, 463

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

INDEX

707

- Combining weights, 304
 Combustion-chamber. See *Tsao*
 Coming-into-being and passing-away, 300
Commentariorum Alchymiae (Libavius), 202 (c)
Commonitorum Palladii, 498 (c)
 Communications, 508
 Compendium of the Doctrines and Styles of the Teaching of Manī . . . See *Mo-Ni Kuang Fo Chiao Fa I Liēh*
 Compendium of Pythagoras. See *Jamā'a Fith-āghurās*
 Complete Compendium on the Perfected Treasure of Lead, Mercury, Wood and Metal. See *Chhiēn Hung Chia Kēng Chih Pao Chi Chhēng*
Compositiones ad Tingenda Musiva . . . (Preparations for Colouring Mosaics, etc.), 328
 Comprehensive Geography of the Ming Empire. See *Ta Ming I Thung Chih*
 Concentration of dilute solutions, 4, 8, 154, 256
 Condensation, 8, 9, 33, 86, 222, 361
 of sea-water, 60
 Condensers, 35, 39
 coils, 40, 44
 counter-current, 98
 de Condorcet, A. N. (philosopher and mathematician, +1743 to +1794), 502
 Confidential Explanation of the Interior Manual of the Nine Adepts; a Shang-Chhing Scripture. See *Shang-Chhing Chiu Chen Chung Ching Nei Chüeh*
 Confidential Instructions for the Ascent to Immortality. See *Tēng Chen Yin Chüeh*
 Confidential Instructions on the Manual of the Heaven-piercing Golden Flower Elixir. See *Chin Hua Chhung Pi Tan Ching Pi Chih*
 Confidential Oral Instructions on Elixirs and Drugs. See *Tan Yao Pi Chüeh*
 Confucius and the Confucians, 242, 298, 413
 'Congress of the Philosophers'. See *Turba Philosophorum*
Coniunctio oppositorum, 121
Conlationes (Cassianus), 346 (d)
 Connell, K. H. (1), 110
 Conring, Hermann (anti-iatrochemical physician, fl. +1648), 323, 347
Consilia Medicinalia (Alderotti), 92, 93, 122–3
Consilium Conjugii, seu de Massa Solis et Lunae, 401 (a)
 Constant-temperature technique, 37
 Constantine IX (Byzantine emperor, r. +1042 to +1054), 501
 Constellations, and the symbol of the cosmic serpent, 376
 Contacts, inter-cultural. See Cultural Contacts
 Contagion, 308 (c)
 Continuation of the Record of the Investigation of Things. See *Hsü Po Wu Chih*
Contra Celsum (Origen), 378 (d)
 Contraction, agglomeration, 300
 Contraries. See Opposites
 Conversations and Discourses of Confucius. See *Lun Yü*
 Cook, Captain James (navigator, +1728 to 1779), 154
 Cooking techniques, 25, 26–7, 97, 115–6, 118, 167
 and the chemical arts, 364
 and time-keeping, 167
 Cooking utensils, 26
 and alchemists' laboratory equipment, 32, 167
 Cooling methods, in distillation apparatus, 33, 39, 43, 72, 86, 87, 89 ff., 119–21, 124–5, 127, 129, 133, 148, 155, 157, 161
 Copernicus, Nicholas, 507 (a)
 Copper, 177, 189, 199, 201, 295, 313, 365, 374, 387, 460, 473
 alloys of. See Alloys
 amalgamation with mercury, 317
 arsenical, 402
 'blanching' of, with mercury, 405
 chloride of, 440
 dilution of silver with, 402
 oligodynamic action of, 173
 precipitation of, 201–4, 311
 production by the wet method, 303–4, 315
 'steeped copper', 203
 turned into gold, 391
 turned into silver, 450
 turned silvery or golden by arsenic, 358
 Copper carbonate, 173, 188, 202, 311, 320, 363
 sulphate, 168, 169, 174–5, 199, 201–2, 203
 sulphide, 177
 Copper cash, 203
 Copperas (green vitriol, ferrous sulphate), 173, 198, 199
 distillation of, 199–200
Coptis root, 452
 Cora Indians. See Tribal peoples
 Coral, 337
 Cordus, Valerius (botanist, chemist and pharmacist, +1515 to +1544), 199
 Corking, 143, 152
 Cornaline, 364
 Cornaro, Luigi (physician and nutritionist, +1467 to +1565), 501–2
 Cornelian Law (–81), 332
 Corpus. See Greek proto-chemical Corpus; Hippocratic Corpus; Jābirian Corpus; Justinian's Corpus; Lullian Corpus; Villanovan Corpus
 Corpus of Greek 'alchemical' (i.e. proto-chemical) Writings, 123–4, 125, 196, 312, 313, 324–6, 327, 328, 332, 335, 338, 339, 343–4, 345, 348, 349, 350, 355, 356, 357, 361, 364, 365, 367, 369, 374, 399–400, 409, 415, 472, 478, 483, 501
 Correspondences, 230, 255, 276–7, 306, 308
 alchemical apparatus and cosmic correspondences, 272, 279–81, 281 ff.
 between alchemical processes and those of Nature, 247–8
 colour, 287, 288
 coordinate nature of, in Chinese thought, 233
 in duration, 232–3, 264–6

- Correspondences (*cont.*)
 Five Element-, 227, 251, 286, 290
 Five Planets, 225–6, 227–9
 and formation of the Elixir, 274
 heat phasing, 266–7, 274
 numerological, 281
 spatial, 286
 temporal, 286
 Yin-Yang, 288
- Corrosion, 461
- Corrosive liquids, 198
- Corrosive sublimate, 174, (d) 402, 448 (d)
- Corsica, 145
- Cosmetics, 174, 342
- Cosmic-chemical charts, 503 (n)
- Cosmic correlations, 274
- Cosmic cycles, 242, 266, 281, 380
- Cosmic egg, 248, 292–7
- Cosmic evolution, 373
- Cosmic ideology, 227
- Cosmic models, 249, 387, 487–8, 489
- Cosmic noria, 386 (e)
- Cosmic process, 255
 alchemist as accelerator of, 242–8
- Cosmic unity, 359
- Cosmogony, 293, 396, 503
- Cosmography, 222
- Cosmology, 230, 248, 261, 378, 396
 Christian, 505
- Cossacks, 104
- Cotton, 417 (g)
- Coughing, relief of, 442
- Counterfeiting. *See* Metallic counterfeiting
- Cover-names and synonyms, 147, 184, 217, 254, 367, 404
 Arabic use of, 471
 lists of, 356
- Coyaji, J. C., 462
- Crab tissues
 effect on lacquer, 207–8, 315
 in recipes for longevity, 208
 rats attracted by, 311
 therapy and, 208, 209
- Craftsmen. *See* Artisans
- Creation theories, 456–7, 486
 and Chinese thought, 465
- Crimea, 104
 Scythian tombs in, 381
- Croll, Oswald (iatrochemical physician, +1580 to +1609), 196 (d)
- Crusaders, 368 (b)
- Cryptogram, 123
- Crystalline structure, 257
- Crystallisation, 8, 9, 190, 193
- Cubic metre, 184 (d), 186 (d)
- Cucurbit. *See* Stills, retort type
- Culinary arts. *See* Cooking techniques
- Cultural contacts, 107, 120, 148, 352–5, 356, 385, 395, 408–9, 414, 422 ff., 485, 499–500, 502, 503
- Arabs and the Latin West, 388
- Asia and Meso-America, 108 ff.
 China and the Arabs, 390, 408, 409, 411–4, 416, 419–21, 422 ff.
- China and the peoples of Central Asia, 416, 469
- China and Persia, 416
- China and the Eastern Mediterranean, 354
- East and West, 44, 76, 196, 332–6, 339, 360, 370, 377, 381, 387–9, 406, 407
- Greek and West Asian cultures, 376
- India and China, 336
- macrobiotic theme, transmission of, 491 (b)
- Mesopotamia and Yunnan, 117
- oral, 177, 179
- Persia and Egypt, 335
- Cumont, F., 386
- Cuneiform tablets, 82
- Cupellation, 177, 245, 380, 402, 442
- Cupro-nickel, 33 (f), 358, 428, 431–2
- Curus Triumphalis Antimonii* ('Basil Valentine'), 202
- Cyanide, 205
- Cyano-genetic glucosides, 205
- Cyanos*. *See* Azurite
- Cycle (*chuan*), Chinese image of, 262
- Cycles of growth and dissolution, 359
- Cyclical characters (*kan chih*), 222, 281 (g)
- Cyclical processes, 222, 224, 230, 235, 286, 306, 308, 379–80
 acceleration of, 243
 in chemical change, 362, 384
 cosmic, 428, 465
 modern science and, 384
 upward tendency of, 236, 262
- Czechoslovakia, 111
- D-amino-acid oxidase, 209
- Daedalus, 488 (f)
- Daki* temperature stabiliser, 41, 44
- Dalman, G. (1), 105
- Damindan valley, 439
- Dance. *See* Ritual dance
- Dancing-girls, 416
- Dastin, John (alchemist, fl. +1320), 498
- Date-wine, 128
- David (King of Israel, early 10th century), 497
- Davidson, J. W., 45, 46, 47
- Davis, Tenney L., 318, 319
- Davy, Sir Humphrey (chemist, +1778 to 1829), 321
- De Alchemia* (Pseudo-Albertus), 366, 368 (c)
- De Aluminibus et Salibus*, 243 (a), 398, 436 (e), 448 (d), 454 (b)
- De Anima in Arte Alchemiae* (Pseudo-Avicenna), 403, 435, 447 (f)
- De Arte Chymiae* (attrib. Roger Bacon, +1603), 495 (a)
- De Artibus et Scientiis Sinarum* (Vossius), 324 (a)
- De Chemo Scientiarum Auctore* (Halen), 346 (a)
- De Coloribus et Artibus Romanorum* (On the Colours and Arts of the Romaioi, i.e. the Byzantines), 328
- De Compositione Alchemiae*, 403, 447 (e)
- De Consideratione Quintae Essentiae* (John of Rupescissa), 122 (g)

- De Cultu Feminarum* (Tertullian), 343 (b)
De Diversis Artibus (Theophilus Presbyter), 328
De Dracone Coelesti, 376 (e)
De Essentiis (Pseudo-Aquinas), 487 (h)
De Hereticis Tractatus (Anselm of Alexandria), 378 (a)
De Hermetica Medicina (Conring), 347
De Idolotria (Tertullian), 343 (b)
De Inventione Veritatis (Geber), 179 (b), 196, 434 (b), 448 (b)
De Investigatione Perfectionis (Geber), 178 (a), 434 (b), 448 (b), 454 (c)
De Iside et Osiride (Plutarch), 347
De Literaria Sinensium (Spizel), 323
De Methodi Medendae (Galen), 473 (j)
De Mineralibus (Albertus Magnus), 492
De Miribili Potestate Artis et Natura (Roger Bacon), 493, 495 (i, j)
De Natura Fossilium (Agricola), 434 (f)
De Natura Rerum (Paracelsus), 487 (h)
De Ortu et Progressu Chemiae (Borrichius), 341 (g)
De Ratione Distillandi (Mattioli), 91
De Re Metallica (Agricola), 191 (c)
De Re Rustica (Columella), 433
De Rebus Metallicis et Mineralibus (Albertus Magnus, c. +1280), 368, 492
De Remediis Secretis (Gesner), 90, 91, 96, 99
De Retardatione Accidentium Senectutis (Roger Bacon), 493 (b), 495 (j), 496
De Sanitate Tuenda (Galen), 493 (c)
De Secretis Naturae seu de Quinta Essentia, 122 (e)
De Secretis Operibus Naturae et de Nullitate Magiae (Roger Bacon), 495 (a, g), 496 (a)
De Simplicium Medicamentorum Temperamentis et Facultatibus (Galen), 459
De Spiritibus et Corporibus, 496
Death, 236, 477–8
Death-and-resurrection motif, 351, 361, 388
Death penalty, 147
Debasement. See Dilution
Decay, inception of, 276
Declarations of the Perfected (or Realised) Immortals. See *Chen Kao*
Decomposition by fire, 472 (g)
Deduction, 298
Dee, John (mathematician and magician, +1527 to +1608), 468 (e)
Deficiency diseases, 140
Definitions
 of chemical and alchemical operations, 8–9
 of the elements, 277
Deipnosophistae (Athenaeus), 355 (g)
Democratic estimate of human capacities, 324 (b)
Democritus of Abdera, 322, 329 (e), 334
Demography, 508 (b)
Demonstration of the Futility of Astrology. See *Ishāra ilā Fasād 'Ilm Abkām*
Deniel, P. L., 68, 119
Dental prosthesis, 417 (g)
Department of Face-Saving Re-definitions, 103 (a)
Dephlegmator, 81, 85, 86, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96
Depictions of earth and sky, on laboratory and apparatus, 291
Deprivation and addition of forms, 361
Dermatitis, 209
Desalination, 60–1, 153 (h), 154
Descartes, René, 455 (g)
Descent, 8, 9
Desiccating agent, 180
Destillatio per descensum, 1, 9, 33 (c), 55–60, 69, 71, 134, 430
Destillatio per filtrum, 9
Detergents, 158 (c), 180
'Devil's testicles', 449
Dheki-yantra (Indian form of still), 104
Dhū al-Nūn ('Him of the Fish'). See *al-Miṣrī*
Dhū al-Qarnāīn ('Him of the Horns', or, 'Him of the Two Ages'), See Alexander the Great
Dhūpa-yantra (Indian form of still), 74 (b), 105
Diaphoretics, 442
Diarrhoea, 191
Dibikos (Hellenistic still with two side-tubes), 72–3, 89, 90, 105, 106, 107, 124
Diels, H. (3), 123–4
Diet, 372, 501
 and longevity, 497–8, 507
'The Difference between the Auncient Physicke . . . and the Latter Physicke' (Bostocke), 328 (a)
Differentiation, 253
Dilations upon Pharmaceutical Natural History. See *Pén Tshao Yen I*
Digby, Sir Kenelm (virtuoso and alchemical philosopher, +1603 to +1665), 502 (j)
Dilution, 351, 358, 365, 402, 405
al-Dimashqī, Abū 'Abd Allāh Shams al-Dīn al-Anṣārī (geographer, d. +1327), 127, 433 (m), 437
al-Dimashqī. See *al-Jaubarī*
Diocletian edict against aurification (+292 or +296), 332, 340, 410 (c)
Dioscorides (pharmacist and physician, +2nd century), 45, 80, 95, 433, 447, 491
Diplōsis, 358, 365, 412
'Direction-prohibitions' in Japan, 468 (c)
Discorsi della Vita Sobria (Cornaro), 50
Discourse on Crustacea. See *Hsieh Phu*
Discourse on the Natures and Properties of Drugs. See *Yao Hsing Lun*
Discourse on the Precious Treasury of the Earth. See *Pao Tsang Lun*
Discourse on the Primary Vitality. See *Yuan Chhi Lun*
Discourses Weighed in the Balance. See *Lun Hēng*
Discovery of the Thoughts. See *Kashf al-Zunūn*
A Discussion of the Marvelous Functions and Perfect Principles of the Practice of the Enchymoma. See *Hsui Tan Miao Yung Chih Li Lun*
Diseases, 336, 477–8, 505
 children's, 62
 caused by the absorption of mercury, 80
 deficiency, 140

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

710

INDEX

- Diseases (*cont.*)
 industrial, 80
 internal, 149
 treatment of, 211, 214, 260, 440, 483, 490, 492
- Disinfection, 191, 315
- Dispensing, 434 (h)
- Distillate, colour of, 138 (a), 147
- Distillation, 8, 9, 25, 30, 33, 34, 49, 54, 78–9, 84, 136, 139–40, 195, 196, 198, 286, 361, 388 of alcohol, 64, 66, 78, 93, 107, 109, 114, 119, 121, 123, 125, 132–40, 141–51 colouring matter and, 147
- descensory. See *Destillatio per descensum*
 dry, 367, 395, 432, 433, 435
 of eggs, 126, 158, 367
 of essential oils, 113, 120, 128, 155, 158–62, 421 Gnosticism and, 385–7 illicit, 110–1 of mercury, 77–8, 132, 134, 158, 161, 240, 258, 301 in the preparation of elixirs, 472 reflux, 351, 374, 380 at relatively low temperatures, 125 of sea-water, 60–2 steam, 120, 130, 159 and sublimation, 47 technical terms for. See Technical terms and world-conceptions, 385–6 Yin and Yang and, 156–7
- Distorting mirrors, 430 (g)
- Diuretics, 181
- Diurnal cycles, 267
- Divinae Institutiones* (Lactantius), 457 (a)
- Divination, 334, 464, 471
- 'Divine' or 'sulphurous' water, 367, 481, 482, 483
- Divinely Written Exalted Canon in Purple Script. See *Tung-Chen Thai-Wei Ling Shu Tzu-Wên Shang Ching*
- Divinely Written Exalted Manual in Purple Script on the Lang-Kan (Gem) Radiant Elixir. See *Tung-Chen Ling Shu Tzu-Wên Lang-Kan Hua Tan Shang Ching*
- Divinely Written Exalted Spiritual Realisation Manual in Purple Script on the Lang-Kan (Gem) Radiant Elixir; a Thai-Wei Scripture. See *Thai-Wei Ling Shu Tzu-Wên Lang-Kan Hua Tan Shen Chen Shang Ching*
- Diwān Shudhūr al-Dhahab* (Poem on the Particles of Gold), 402
- Djinn* (*jinn*), 480
- Doll, magic, 453 (d)
- 'Domestic Chemistry of Moses', 327, 345, 365
- Dosage, of drugs, etc., 191, 291, 303, 460, 484
- Double-hours, 233, 264, 267, 272, 280–1
- 'Doubling the fire', 269, 270
- Dough, 366, 408
- Dragon, 496
 in Chinese ornamentation, 381
 in the cosmological tradition, 252, 377 double-, 379 with tail in or near the mouth, 381
- See also* Ouroboros
- Dragon-and-Tiger platform. See *Lung hu tan thai*
- Dragon-tiger resonances, 315
- Draught, for furnaces, 15–16
- Dream Pool Essays. See *Méng Chhi Pi Than*
- Dreaming of the Capital while the Rice is Cooking. See *Méng Liang Lu*
- Drinking-cups, 132
- Drinking-pot, 166
- Drugs, 184, 190, 245, 263, 299, 447, 459, 492 of animal origin, 421 containing alcohol, 122, 135, 136, 149 containing arsenic, 192, 421 containing cinnabar, 302, 303 containing crab tissue, 208, 209 containing mercury, 260–1 containing realgar, 191 fertility-, 205 Galenic classification of, 394 inorganic, 297 metallic and mineral, 330, 388, 421, 491 from the Persian and Turkic countries, 420 (a) plant-, 208, 342, 421, 481 preparations of, 54 for prolonging life. See Elixirs of immortality and longevity
- Dry cleaning, 158 (c)
- 'Dual-cultivation' principle, 211–2, 233 (f), 249, 265, 275
- Dubois, François. See Sylvius, Franciscus
- Dubs, H. H. (34), 353, 474
- Duck blood, 171, 176
- Dufour. See Vitalis du Four
- Dung, 433, 436 as ingredient in solubilisation recipes, 205
- Dunlop, Prof. D. M., 355 (a), 471; (7) 492; (8) 476
- Duration. See Correspondences, in duration
- The Dutch, 115, 153
- Dwarfs, 498 (c)
- Dyeing, 325, 328, 434 of surface-films, 358
- Dyes, 147, 199, 350
- Dysentery, 191, 192
- Dzungaria, 438
- 'Eagle-stone' (*aetites*), 205
- Early Han (period), 45, 51, 53, 202
- Earthenware, as material for stills, 114, 144 (g)
- Eau-de-vie*, 149
- Ebeling, E., 82
- Ecbatana, 333
- Eclipses, 222, 376
- Ecstatic introspection, 244–5
- Edessa, 377 (i), 410, 426
- Edge-runner mill. See Mills
- Edict of +1529 against the use of distilled pulque, 109–10
- Edkins, J. (18), 140
- Eggs, 367, 375 as containers or reaction-vessels, 71 (a), 198, 294–6, 367
- distillation of, 126, 158, 297 (a), 367

INDEX

711

- Eggs (*cont.*)
 as image of Chaos, 292–7, 366
 incubation of, 293, 297, 434
 ‘philosopher’s’. *See* Philosopher’s Egg
 preservation of, 315
 proteins of, 368
 made of silver, 297
- Egypt and Egyptians, 124, 126, 180, 312, 333, 335, 336, 340, 346, 359, 362, 363, 375, 377, 381, 397, 414, 418, 433, 434, 481
- alchemy, 335, 411–2
 chemistry, 324
 labour conditions, 349
 magic, 505
 metallurgical techniques, 335
 mythological papyri, 376
 and the origin of ‘chem-’, 347–9, 354
 scribes, 348–9
 serpent symbolism, 375–6
 temple and palace artisanate, 329
- The Eight Adepts, 178, 179
- Eight Disquisitions on putting oneself in accord with the Life-Force. *See* *Tsun Shêng Pa Chien*
- Eight Trigrams, 291
- Elamite necropolis, Susa, relief at, 376
- Elba, 363 (c)
- ‘Elective Affinities’ (Goethe), 321
- Electricity, positive and negative, 503 (e)
- Electrochemical series of the elements, 320, 431
- Elementa Chemiae* (Boerhaave), 368
- Eliade, Mircea (5), 246
- The Elixir of Blessedness. *See* *Kimiyyâ’ al-Sâ’âda*
- Elixir containers, 292
- ‘Elixir embryo’ (*tan phi*), 293
- Elixir ideas, 398, 505, 508
 Chinese, 489
 origins of, 396
 transmission of, 432, 448, 485, 499–500
- ‘Elixir seed’, 217
- Elixir stones, 450
- Elixirs of immortality and longevity, 168, 197, 206–7, 211, 215, 221, 224, 226, 235, 237–9, 241, 249, 252, 262, 263, 311, 316, 323, 324, 328, 329–30, 355, 371, 388, 419, 420, 461, 472, 474–6, 478, 481, 482, 494, 497–8, 499, 507
- as agents for chemical change, 394
- chemo-therapeutic, 392
- effects of, 175
- favourable auspices for, 218
- in Greek and Chinese thought, 355
- harmful, 323, 330, 442
- hu* merchants and, 419
- ingestion of, 208, 258, 259, 330, 420
- medical value of, 478, 479, 483, 492
- minerals used in, 168
- natural cyclically-transformed, 232, 236, 242, 245, 249, 259, 260, 261, 262, 264, 265, 270, 272, 274, 295, 317, 380, 404, 453
- poisonous nature of, 483–4
- preparation of, 40, 43, 72, 74, 231, 243, 254, 255, 256, 258, 261, 268–9, 274, 281, 294, 301, 317, 387, 459, 472
- recipes 217, 226, 298, 300
 transmutation by, 402, 472
 white and red, 391 (c), 392 (k)
 yield of, 303
- Ellis molecular still, 102
- ‘Elucidation of the Parts of the Egg according to Justinian’, 367
- Embassies
 An-Tun, to the court of the Han, 332
 Arabic (+651), 416
 Chhin Lun, to the court of Wu, 332
 from Muslim Spain (+1317), 337
 from the Umayyads (+726), 417
- Embryo, as image of elixir ingredients, 293, 296 (h), 401 (b)
- Embryology, 366–7, 401 (b)
 terminology. *See* Technical terms
- Emendations to the National History. *See* *Kuo Shih Pu*
- ‘Emerald Table’. *See* *Tabula Smaragdina*
- Empedocles of Akragas, 312 (e), 336
- Empirical technology, 365
- Empiricism, 460, 502, 503
- Enchantments. *See* Spells
- Enchymoma, 291, 306, 380
- End of the Search. *See* *Nihâyat al-Talab*
- Endogamy, 322
- Enfleurage, 160–1
- Engineering, hydraulic, 305 (b)
- England, life-spans in, 507
 alembics found in, 85 (a)
- ‘English drops’, 434
- English language, 352
- Enlightenment period, 488
- Enoch (prophet), 343, 345, 346
- Entelechy, 470 (k)
- d’Entrecolles, F. X. (Jesuit, +1662 to +1741), 47
- Envoy, 332, 337, 416
- Enzymes, 168, 367
 chemistry of, 209
- St Ephraim the Syrian (d. +373), 386
- Epidemics, 315
- Epigrams. *See* Axioms
- Epilepsy, 483
- Epiphanius, St (+310 to +403), 346 (k), 386 (e)
- Epistle on Alchemy (Ibn Bishrûn), 480
- Epistle on the Chrysopoeia (Psellus), 501
- Epistle of the Sun to the Crescent Moon. *See* *Risâlat al-Shams ila'l-Hilâlî*
- Epistle in Refutation of those who Claim the Artificial Fabrication of Gold and Silver (al-Kindî), 398
- Epistles of the Brethren of Sincerity. *See* *Rasâ'il Ikhwân al-Safa*
- Epistola de Mirab. Potest.* *See* *De Mirabili Potestate Artis et Naturae*
- Epitome of the Calculation of Integration and Equation. *See* *Kitâb al-Mukhtaşar fi Hisâb al-Jâbr . . .*
- Epsom salt, 181–2, 270
- Equalitarian doctrines, 397
- Equations, 173–4, 176

- Equilibrium. See *Krasis*
 Equinoxes, 227
 'Equivalence of intellects', 324 (b)
Erh-li-kang, excavations at, 27
Erh Ya dictionary, 277 (c), 381
 Eschatology, 396
Esoteric Illustrations of the Concordance of the Great Regenerative Enchymoma. See *Ta Huan Tan Chhi Pi Thu*.
 Essay on Smelting the Yellow (Li Tê-Yü), 242
 Essay upon the Sun, Moon, and the Dark Axis. See *Jih Yieh Hsiian Shu Lun*
 Essence of the Art and Aid to the Workers. See '*Ain al Ṣan'a wa'aun al-Ṣana'a*'
 Essenes, 341
 Essential Ideas of the Neo-Confucian School of Philosophers. See *Hsing Li Ching I*
 Essential Instructions for the Preparation of the Great Elixir. See *Hsiu Lien Ta Tan Yao Chih*
 Essential oils, 395, 421, 470
 artificial colouring of, 147
 distillation of, 113, 120, 128, 155, 158–62, 421
 Essential Teachings of the Manual of the Supreme-Pole Adept on the Ninefold Cyclically Transformed Elixir. See *Thai-Chi Chen-Jen Chiu Chuan Huan Tan Ching Yao Chieh*
 Essentials of Agricultural Technology. See *Nung Hsiueh Tsuan Yao*
 Essentials of the Elixir Manuals for Oral Transmission . . . See *Thai-Chhing Tan Ching Yao Chieh*
 Essentials of the Gold Elixir; Record of the Kinship of the Three. See *Chin Tan Pi Yao Tshan Thung Lu*
 Essentials of the Pharmacopoeia Ranked according to Nature and Efficacy. See *Pén Tshao Phin Hui Ching Yao*
 Etesian stone, 313
 Ethical polarisation, 490
 Ethiopia, 111
 Ethyl acetate, 178
Etymologicon (Vossius), 350
 Euclid, translation of, 411
 Eucratid kings, 373
 Euphrates river, 410, 426
 Europe, 55, 77, 131, 167, 174, 188, 192, 200, 201–2, 297, 313, 318, 414, 432, 433
 alchemy, 199, 212, 225, 227, 248, 253, 278, 297, 318, 323, 324, 396, 398, 454, 483
 alloys in, 33
 anti-coining edicts, 332
 astronomy, 487
 attempts to put down falsification, 332
 brewing, 135
 chemical techniques, 72–3
 chemistry, 308
 cosmography, 222
 discovery of alcohol, 43
 distillation, 140, 145, 157, 162
 elixir ideas transmitted to, 485
 flame test, 185
 freezing-out method, 152
 gunpowder, 194, 195
 influence of the planets, 227
 life-spans in, 507–8
 magic squares, 463
 material immortality and longevity, 491 ff.
 mineral acids, 195
 modern science, 308
 naturalists, 207
 oldest condenser in, 43–4
 philosophy, 245
 physics, 305
 potassium nitrate, 190
 proto-chemical literature, 311
 proto-chemistry, 328
 sal ammoniac, 447
 stills, 80, 81, 82, 87, 91, 93, 111, 129, 155
 still-cooling, 148, 157, 162
 sublimation methods, 44–5, 49
 sulphur–mercury theory, 457
 Euthydemid kings, 373
 Evaporation, 4, 8, 9, 143, 256, 461
 Evolution, 224, 230, 234
 cosmic, 373
 of minerals and metals, 234, 247
 Exalted Canon of the Imperial Lord of the Golden Gates . . . See *Huang-Thien Shang-Chhing Chin Chhiueh Ti-Chiin Ling Shu Tsu-Wen Shang Ching*
 Excavations. See Archaeological excavations
 'Exhalations', of the earth, according to Aristotle, 362
 Exo-skeleton, 209
 Exogamy, 322
 Exorcism, 342, 358
 Expansion, disaggregation, 300
 Expectorants, 442
 Expeditions. See Voyages
 Experimental philosophers, 324
 Experimentation, 161, 177, 179, 185, 187, 188, 255, 397, 509
 Sir Thomas Browne, on proteinaceous substances, 368
 deflagrating mixture, 186, 194
 to distinguish between crude sodium sulphate and saltpetre, 186–7
 flame-test, 185, 186, 187, 194
 'regenerated elixir', 373
 with weighing, 301, 394
 Explanation of the Dragon-and-Tiger Cyclically Transformed Elixir. See *Lung Hu Huan Tan Chueh*
 Explanation of the Heart Elixir Canon: a Shang-Tung Scripture. See *Shang-Tung Hsin Tan Ching Chueh*
 Explanation of the Inventory of Metals and Minerals according to the Numbers Five (Earth) and Nine (Metal) . . . See *Chin Shih Pu Wu Chiueh Shu Chueh*
 Exploitation of the Works of Nature. See *Thien Kung Khai Wu*
 Exploration, and the Chinese, 332 (f)

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

INDEX

713

- Exports, 149, 166
 Extraction apparatus, 98, 100, 120
 Algerian, 106
 Mesopotamian, 98
 Extraterritoriality, 417 (c)
 'Eye-opening' ceremony, 489 (d)
 Eyes
 diseases of, 442, 483
 lotions for, 173
- Fa Yuan Chu Lin* (Forest of Pearls from the Garden of the (Buddhist) Law), 215 (b)
- Fables, 337–9, 347, 493–4
 about automata, 488
 about the *Tabula Smaragdina*, 369
- Fabricius, J A. (bibliographer, +1668 to +1736), 346
- Faghfur (Thien Tzu), 451 (g)
- The Fall, 493
- Fallen Angels, 341 ff.
- Fallibility of the ancients, 268
- Falsification, 350–1
- 'Family image' in alchemy, 251–2, 253 (a), 289 (d)
- Fan shih shui* (aqueous solution of alum), 171
- Fang Chhi-en-Li (writer, c. +900), 143
- Fang chang* (headman, *qādi*), 417
- Fang Hsin-Fang, 149
- Fang I-Chih (scientific encyclopaedist, d. +1671), 297
- al-Fārābi. *See* Abū Nasr . . .
- al-Farghānī. *See* Ibn Katīr . . .
- al-Fārisī. *See* al-Iṣṭakhrī . . .
- Fasting, 245
- Fatimid Caliphate (+909 to +1171), 397
- Faust* (Goethe), 487 (h)
- al-Fazārī, Muḥ. ibn Ibrāhīm (translator, d. c. +800), 424 (h)
- Feather, used as scraper, 163
- Fei* (sublimation, perhaps distillation, if of mercury), 79, 134–5
- Fei Chhang-Fang (Buddhist historian, fl. +597), 413
- Feifel, E. (1), 134
- Felt, 103
- Fēn chiu* spirits, 149, 150
- Fēn Thu* (Illustrated Manual on Powders, i.e. Salts), 188
- Fēn yeh*, 465 (a)
- Fēng Chih (Confucian scholar and writer, fl. +904), 159
- Fēng lu* (stove or brazier pierced with holes), 15–16
- Fēng Shih-Hua (writer on wine, +16th century), 147
- Ferghana, 152, 354, 370, 409, 416, 422, 423, 437, 439, 469
- Fermentation, 8, 9, 131, 133, 134, 135, 136, 138–9, 306 (a), 351, 364, 365 ff., 374, 384, 388, 404–5, 408, 499
- deviant, 135 (e)
- industry, 14, 41, 136
- techniques, 29
- terminology. *See* Technical terms
- Fermented Beverages Authority, 147 (b)
- Fermented Beverages Superintendent, 131
- Ferric oxide, 295
- Ferric sulphate, 173
 solubilisation of, 201
- Ferrous acetate, 173
- Ferrous sulphate, 173, 196, 197, 198, 199, 200
 crystalline, 199
- Fertile Crescent, 426
- Fertility potions, 205–7
- Fertility rituals, 361 (d)
- Fertilizers, 191
- Fevers, 483
- Fez (Morocco), 130
- 'Fields of Cinnabar' (*tan thien*), 288
- 'Fight, copper! Fight, quicksilver!', etc., 344 (i)
- Fihrist al-'Ulūm* (Bibliography of the Sciences), 344, 389, 390, 391, 399, 411, 412 (d), 450
- Filtration, 8, 9
 of sea-water through the earth, 60
 through sand, 315
 through wax, 60
- Firdaws al-Hikma* (Paradise of Wisdom), 463
- Firdawsi (Iranian poet, c. +932 to +1026), 481
- Fire, two kinds of, 502–3
- Fire control
 by distance of vessel, 268–9, 270
 by weighing the fuel, 15, 266–8, 269, 270
- Fire phasing, 266–79, 284–5, 303, 362, 380
 linear, 270, 272
 formula for, 272–3
 numerology and, 277
 metaphysical basis of, 278
- Fire-subduing processes, 263
- Fire-tube boilers, 40
- 'Fire-wine', or 'fire-pressured wine', 135, 146
- Fireflies, 314
- Firing cycle, of increase and decrease, 270, 273, 274
 protracted, 260–1
 two-variable phasing in, 275, 276, 277
- Firmicus Maternus, Julius (astrological writer, c. +336), 340, 347
- First translation of a secular work into Arabic, 390 (g)
- Fischer, Emil (organic chemist, 1852 to 1919), 368
- Fish-bones, removal from the throat, 442
- Fish-hooks, 431
- Fish poisons, 314
- Five Amulets, 213 (b)
- Five Colours, 228, 288–9
- Five Elements, 122 (c), 156–7, 201, 210, 221, 223, 225, 226, 229, 230, 234, 235, 247, 250, 268, 276, 277, 278, 291, 305, 306, 308, 317, 329, 336, 360, 373, 464, 468
 spatial correspondences, 286, 290
 and Arabic pentad of principles, 465
- 'Five-Elements Jade Casing' method, 296
- Five Grains, 286 (e)
- Five Hundred Books (in the Jābirian Corpus), 393
- Five Metals, 250

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

714

INDEX

- Five Minerals, 225, 226
 Five Phases, 223
 Five Planets, 225, 226, 229, 289, 427
 Five Sapidities, 228 (j)
 Fixation, 8–9
 ‘Fixing of Sol’, 122 (g)
 Flame test. *See* Experimentation
 Flasks, designed to cool bacterial suspensions, 44
 Fleeces
 and condensation, 60, 61, 81, 95, 97
 and technique for obtaining oil of pitch, 95
 Fleischer, Heinrich L. (Arabist, 1801 to 1888), 473
 Flint, 364
 Floating Elixir, 315
 ‘Floreat essence’, 228 (g), 229, 258
 Floss silk. *See* Silk floss
 ‘Flower dew’ (*hua lu*), 161
 Fludd, Robert (iatrochemical physician and natural philosopher, +1574 to +1637), 503
 ‘Flying frosty snow’, 170, 174
 Fo-Lin (perhaps Byzantium), 337
Fo Shuo Fo I Wang Ching (Buddha Vaidyarāja Sūtra), 336
Fo Tsu Li Tai Thung Tsai (General Record of Buddhist and Secular History through the Ages), 413, 414
 Focal character of Islamic science, 389 (a)
 Foetal development, 229, 293, 366–7
 Foetus, artificial, incubation of, 396
 Folk-lore, 337–9
 first use of phrase, 502 (d)
 Fontanelles, 445 (g)
 Food and drink, 494
 Food chains, 307 (d)
 Food industry workers, 70
 Food supplies, 508
 ‘Food vessels’ (*tui*), 25
 Forest of Pearls from the Garden of the (Buddhist) Law. *See* *Fa Yuan Chu Lin*
 Forke, A. (4), 133
 Form and matter, 229 (d), 361
 ‘Formal function’, 278
 Former Han (dynasty). *See* Early Han
 Formosa. *See* Thaïwan
 Fossils, 449–50
 ‘Fountain of Youth’, 494 (a)
 Four elements. *See* Aristotelian four elements
 The Four Lords of Liang, 136, 140, 151
 ‘Four primes’, 336
 Four qualities (*tabā'i*), 459, 478, 490
 Four Seasons, 468
 ‘Four-seasons’ heating technique, 283, 285
 du Four. *See* Vitalis du Four
 Fowler’s Solution, 192
 Fox, 339
 The Fox-Hard Master. *See* Hu Kang Tzu
 Fractionation-columns, 44
 Franciscans, 44, 485, 497
 Franke, H. (1), 338; (18) 413
 Frankincense, 159, 369 (c)
 ‘Freezing-out’ method, 151, 152–4, 179
 Frescoes, 67
 at the cave-temples of Wan-fo-hsia, 66, 67
 Fritillary corms, 320
 Frog’s tongue, used in charm, 312
 ‘Frozen-out wine’. *See* Wine
 Fruits, poisonous, 312
Fu (fixing, ‘subduing’), 5, 250, 256, 262
Fu-Hsi and Nü-Kua (organiser gods), 379 (d)
Fu Hung Thu (Illustrated Manual on the Subduing of Mercury), 187, 188
Fu Kung (Sung zoologist, crustacea, fl. +1059), 208
Fu-ling fungus, 235
Fu Mēng-Chi (+13th-century astronomer at Marāghah), 425 (g)
Fu-phing, frozen-out wine from, 152
Fu shen (‘Pachyma spirit’), 235
Fu Tsēng-Hsiang (agriculturist, fl. 1900), 66
Fu Yün-Mu Chu Shih Yao Hsiao Hua San-shih-liu Shui Fa (Thirty-Six Methods for the Bringing of Substances into Aqueous Solution [by means of] Transformations caused by Nitre . . .), 168–9
 Fuchs, W. (7), 337
 Fuel, and fire-control, 15, 266–7, 268, 270–1, 274, 275
 Fuente, J. de la (1), 107, 108
 Fukien, 204
 Fukienese dialect, 352
 Fumaroles, 437
Fumus juventutis (exhalations or effluvia of healthy young persons), 496–7
 Funerary stoves, 30, 32
 ‘Fur’, or ‘boiler-scale’, 181
 Furnace (*lu* or *tsao*), 10, 18, 34, 274, 282
 cosmic correspondences in arrangement of, 272, 276, 279–81
 decorated, 291, 292
 design of, 291
 rite for protection of, 289–90
 with round top and square bottom, 292
 de Furno. *See* Vitalis du Four
 Further Indies, 486
 ‘Furthest West’, meaning of, 414
 Fusion, 8, 9
Gaja-kumbhat (still, ‘resembling an elephant-pot’), 131–2
 Galen, 394, 410, 447, 459, 477, 490, 494
 Galenic degrees, 459, 460
 Galileo, 502
 Gall-nuts, 315
 Gallo-Roman culture, 377
 Gandhāra, 423
 envoys from, 332
 Gandhāran still-type. *See* Stills
 Gangue impurity, 303
 Garbers, K. (1), 49, 127, 129
 Gas bubbler, 164–5, 166
 Gases, 395
 inert, 321

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

INDEX

715

- Geber (ps. of a Latin alchemist, c. +1290), 8, 9, 55 (e), 83, 91, 178, 185, 196, 198, 199, 318, 366, 404 (e), 434, 448, 454, 457
 relation to 'Jābir', 391
- Geerts, A. J. C. (1), 62
- Gehenna, 439 (c)
- Gems, 342, 350, 390, 412, 449, 492
 artificial, 333, 451
 Gnostic, 375
 inscribed, 376
 of rock-crystal, 337
 tingeing of, 325
- Genealogical tables, of alchemists, 331
- General Description of the World in the Thai-Phing reign-period. *See* *Thai-Phing Huan Yü Chi*
- General Record of Buddhist and Secular History through the Ages. *See* *Fo Tsu Li Tai Thung Tsai*
- General Survey of the Lives of the Holy Immortals. *See* *Shen Hsien Thung Chien*
- Generation, 306 (a), 364, 388, 495
 of animals, 401
 artificial, 396, 451, 485, 486, 488, 495
 procedures, 486 ff., 490
 spontaneous, 234, 396, 451, 486, 488, 489
 of the first man, 486
- Generation and destruction of the elements, 469
- Genesis, 341, 377, 495
- Geo-botanical prospecting, 314
- Geodes, 205–7, 364
- Geoffroy, E. F. (chemist and physician, +1672 to +1731), 322
- Geographers, 424, 425
- Geographia Generalis* (Varenius), 323 (f)
- Geological coupling of minerals and metals, 232, 233
- Geological processes and the preparation of elixirs of immortality, 231–2
- Geological prospecting, 233, 314
- Geology, 233
- Geomancy, 223, 292, 298, 390
- Geometric space, and the cosmos, 222
- Geometrical shapes, associated with the planets, 427–8
- Georgius (Monophysite Bp. and translator, d. +724), 410 (b)
- Gerard of Cremona (translator, +1114 to +1187), 398, 403
- Geriatrics, first use of word, 502 (d)
- 'Germs', 234
- Gerontology, 507
 first use of word, 502 (d)
- Gesner, Conrad (naturalist and chemist, +1516 to +1565), 60, 61, 90, 91, 93, 94, 96, 98, 99, 121
- al-Ghāfiqī, Abū Ja'far (pharmaceutical naturalist, d. +1165), 433 (m), 436 (e), 452 (g)
- Ghāyat al-Hakīm. *See* *Kitāb Ghāyat al-Hakīm*
- al-Ghazālī al-Tūsī, Abū Ḥamīd (theologian, +1059 to +1111), 425 (f), 481 (e)
- Ghee, 139 (g)
- Ghosts and spirits, 289, 290
- Giants, 340, 342
- Gilbertus Anglicus (+13th-century physician), 122 (f)
- Gildemeister, J. (1), 350
- Gilding, 57, 324, 328, 358, 416, 434
- Ginger, 452
- Glass, 1, 180, 324, 328, 387, 429, 451
 tingeing of, 325
- Glass still-heads, 126
- Glauber, J. R. (chemist, c. +1603 to +1670), 44, 153, 179, 433
- Glauber's salt, 181–2, 183, 190
- Glucosides, cyanogenetic, 205
- Glyphomancy, 461
- Gnostic gems, 375
- Gnostic literature, 369 (c), 377
- Gnostic period (–2nd to +3rd centuries), 376
- Gnostic rapture, 250
- Gnostics and Gnosticism, 253, 341, 364, 384, 393, 409, 491, 502, 503 (a)
 and distillation, 385–7
 fundamental ideas of, 377 (a), 378 (a)
- Ophite, 378
 prayer to Aeon throned on the Great Bear, 377 (j)
 tendency to eightfold classifications, 502 (f)
 whether a Christian heresy, 377 (a), 378 (a)
- Gobi desert, 140, 145
 miners of, 339
- God of Israel, 377
- Godwin, William (progressive writer, +1756 to 1836), 502
- Goethe, Wolfgang, 321, 487 (h), 501
- Gold, 40, 135, 174, 177, 216, 224, 231, 234, 293, 354, 357, 366, 369 (c), 387, 412, 469, 472
 alluvial, 339
 amalgamation with mercury, 317, 380
 'artificial', 419, 456; associated with immortality, 330, 481
 cinnabar and, 233, 470
 coinage, 336, 337, 408
 colour, 325
 copper turned into, 391
 degradation of, 408 (a)
 deposits, 336–7
 development of, 297
 evolution of, 233
 and the idea of the redemption of man, 224
 internal and external characteristics, 394
 making of. *See* Aurification
 maturation in the earth, acceleration of, 244, 405
 names for, 354
 persists for ever without spontaneous decay, 404
 placer, 338 (c)
 potable, 94, 218, 293, 353, 496, 506
 'projection' of, 330
 purification of, 177, 380
 'purple sheen'–, 356
 sal ammoniac and the detection of false gold, 442
 silver turned into, 394

- Gold and Caerulean Jade Treatise on the Similarities and Categories of the Five Substances and the 'Kinship of the Three'. *See Chin Pi Wu Hsiang Lei Tshan Thung Chhi*
- 'Gold-digging ants' fable, 338–9
- Gold Elixir Dragon and Tiger manual. *See Chin Tan Lung Hu Ching*
- Gold-elixir preparations. *See* Elixir preparations
- 'Gold solution' (*chin i*), 177
- Gold leaf, 499
- Golden age, 493 (e)
- Golden alloys, 295
- Golden Fleece, 338 (c)
- Golden Key to the Physiological Aspects of the Regenerative Enchymoma. *See Huan Tan Nei Hsiang Chin Yo Shih*
- Golem, 488 (g)
- Gonville & Caius College, Cambridge, +14th-century MS of the *Turba* and of Geberian writings, 85
- Gooch crucible, 33 (b)
- 'Gospel of Philip', 360 (d)
- 'Gospel of Thomas', 359 (b), 361 (b), 363 (e)
- Government monopolies, 147
- Govinda Dāsa, 131
- Graeco-Egyptian culture, 370, 388
- papyri, 333
- proto-chemists, 374, 386, 390, 409
- Graeco-Roman philosophers, 388
- Grain. *See* Cereal grains
- Granada, 337
- Grand Unity (Thai I), 293
- Granet, Marcel, 246, 264, 276, 278
- Grape wine, 136–41, 149, 150, 151–2
- distillation of, 155, 157, 162
- Grasses, 83
- Gravimetry, 299–305
- Gravitational attraction, 321
- Grease, absorption of, 315
- Great Bear, 281, 465, 467, 468
- The Great Encyclopedia. *See Thu Shu Chi Chhêng*
- The Great Liturgies . . . *See Shang-Chhing Ling-Pao Ta Fa*
- The Great Ninefold Cyclically Transformed Numinous Cinnabar Elixir. *See Chiu Chuan Ling Sha Ta Tan*
- The Great Pharmacopoeia. *See Pén Tshao Kang Mu*
- Great Wall, 426
- Great Year (Grand Polarity Superior Epoch), 222–3, 428
- Greater Book of Pity. *See Kitâb al-Râhma al-Kâbir*
- Greater Book of Properties. *See Kitâb al-Khawâṣṣ al-Kâbir*
- Greatest Book of the Moon. *See Kitâb al-Qamar al-Akbar*
- Greek chemical technical terms. *See* Technical terms
- 'Greek Fire', 121, 129, 158, 162 (a), 329
- Greek language
- and derivations of 'chem-', 325, 354, 355
- 17 consonants of, 462
- Greek medicine, 410, 459
- Greek mythology, 296
- Greek proto-chemical corpus. *See* Corpus of Greek 'alchemical' (proto-chemical) writings
- Greek proto-chemists. *See* Hellenistic proto-chemists
- Greek technical terms. *See* Technical terms
- Greek words, with the general sense of liquid and pouring, and the derivation of the root chem-, 349–50
- Greeks, 57, 224, 311, 312, 322, 323, 331, 334, 356, 359, 362, 384, 388, 400, 409, 435, 447, 448, 477, 491, 501
- alchemy, 412, 469
- artisans, 70, 329
- atomic theories, 308, 374
- generation theories, 488
- magic, 505
- Green-Waves Memories. *See Chhing Po Tsa Chih*
- Green wood, destructive distillation of, 178
- Gregorius (Jacobite Patriarch). *See* Abû-al-Faraj al-Malâti
- Grierson, Sir G. A. (1), 105
- Grinding instruments, 162
- Growth, 322
- underground. *See* Underground growth
- Growth-cycles
- acceleration of, by man, 243
- of animals, 243, 246
- of minerals, 223–4, 243, 246
- of plants, 243, 246
- Gruman, G. J. (1), 475, 478, 485, 490, 491, 493
- Guibert, Nicholas (chemist, +1547 to +1620), 202
- Guide to the Creation (i.e. Nature). *See Tsao-Hua Chih Nan*
- Guide for the Struggling, on the Highest Questions. *See Irshâd al- Qâṣid ilâ Asnâ al-Maqâṣid*
- Gujarat, 106
- Gums used for incense, and in pharmacy, 83, 436 (b)
- Gundisalvi, Dominic (translator and archdeacon, fl. +1135), 403
- Gunpowder, 24, 40 (c), 187, 190, 193, 194, 196, 199, 324, 432
- first invented in China, 195
- formulae, 190 (e), 194, 197 (c)
- military use of, 195
- oldest mentions of, in Europe, 195
- Guppy, H. B. (1), 114
- 'Gut-rotting wine', 152 (d)
- Gymnastics, 420
- Gypsum (calcium sulphate), 20
- aqueous suspension of, 171
- Hadid al-Šîn (iron of China), 428 (a), 429, 430 (d)
- Hadîths (authentic sayings of the Prophet), 411, 488 (j)
- Haematite, 320, 450

- Hai Yao Pén Tshao* (Natural History of the Southern Countries beyond the Seas), 159, 421
- Hainan, sublimation-distillation apparatus in, 47
- Hair, 435
dry distillation of, 158, 395, 432, 433
- Hajji Khalîfa (Turkish bibliographer and encyclopaedist, d. +1658), 415 (e), 471 (i)
- al-Ḥâkim bi'-amri'l-lâh ('the Ruler, by the Grace of God', Fatimid Caliph, r. +996 to +1020), 391 (a), 436 (e), 481
- Hakka dialect, 352
- Haldane, J. B. S., 446 (b)
- Halen, G. E. (+1694), 346
- Hales, Stephen (chemist and plant physiologist, +1677 to +1761), 61
- Halite, 270
- von Haller, Albrecht (physician and physiologist, +1708 to +1777), 1
- Halleux, R. (1), 363
- Hallucinogens, 109, 217, 245, 249
- Haly (= Haly Abbas). *See* 'Alî ibn al-Abbâs al-Majûsi
- Ham (Cham, son of Noah), 346, 347
- al-Hamdânî. *See* Râshîd al-Dîn . . .
- Hammâm*, 433
- Hammâm-i Mariya*, 131 (a)
- Hammer-Jensen, I. (2), 350
- Hammurâbî, 376
- Han (period), 76, 79, 133, 134, 202, 217, 308, 329, 353, 361, 432, 447, 462
anti-coining edict, 330, 332
aurification, 330
cast-iron cauldrons, 18
funerary stoves, 30
grape wine, 137
medicine, 336
scholars, 307
steamer vessels, 30, 118
tiles, 280
tomb-models of stoves, 31, 148
tomb-reliefs, 465
- Han Chhung (+2nd-century alchemist), 331
- Han Shih Wai Chuan* (Moral Discourses illustrating Mr Han's Recension of the 'Book of Odes'), 207 (h), 307 (d)
- Han Wu Ti (emperor, r. --141 to --87), 330, 465, 496
- Han Wu Ti Nei Chuan* (Intimate Biography of Emperor Wu of the Han), 216 (a), 414 (e)
- Han Yen-Chih (botanical and horticultural writer fl. +1178), 161
- Han Yü (Thang scholar, +768 to +824), 159
- Hândi* pot, 86, 87
- Hangchow, 417
- Haoma*. *See* *Soma*
- al-Harawî. *See* Abû Manṣûr al-Harawî
- Harbî the Himyarite (Shaikh, aged 463 years), 480
- Harden, A. & Young, W. J., 384
- Harrân, 410, 426
- texts emanating from, 390, 415
- al-Harrânî, Sâlim, 427 (a)
- al-Harrânî. *See* Thâbit ibn Qurrah al-Harrânî
- Harsha Vardhana (king of Magadha, r. +648), 197
- Harvey, William, 497 (c), 507
- al-Hasan ibn al-Nakâd al-Mawâsili (Jâbirian writer, fl. +932), 393 (p)
- al-Hasan al-Rammâh (military writer, fl. c. +1280), 194, 432 (b)
- Hastinâpura, excavations at, 97
- Heart
correlated symbolically with the reaction-vessel, 295, 296
diseases of, 483
- Heart Elixir, 295
- The Heart of Medicine. *See* *I Hsin Fang*
- Heat control. *See* Fire control
- Heating apparatus, 68–9, 256
coils, 40
- Heating times. *See* Fire phasing
- Heaven, 490
- Hebrew language, 313
and the derivation of 'chem-', 351, 354
See also subjects under Jewish
- Hei hu kuei* (black tiger casing), 19
- Heilungchiang, saltpetre industry in, 192
- Helical phasing scheme, 272, 273, 274
- Heliodorus (Byzantine alchemical poet, fl. c. +716), 327, 491
- Helium, 384
- Hellenistic aurification and aurification known in China, 337
- Hellenistic chemical-technological papyri, 329, 349, 350, 355, 365
- Hellenistic culture, 358, 463
Arabs and, 388–9, 409, 452, 461, 470, 488–9, 490
possible influence of Chinese thought on, 364
- Hellenistic proto-chemists, 74–6, 84, 86, 90, 98, 158, 175, 178, 199, 221, 313, 318, 323, 324, 325, 328, 339, 348, 349, 351, 355, 367, 380, 385, 387, 390, 393, 400, 401, 402, 404, 410, 412, 454, 490
and alcohol, 124
aphorisms or 'enigmas' of. *See* Proto-chemical aphorisms
- and Arabic culture, 389, 393–4, 409, 485
- and atomism, 374
idea of poison among, 484
Jewish element in, 345, 351
- Hellenistic religions, 379
- Hellenistic still. *See* Stills
- van Helmont, J. B. (Belgian iatrochemist, +1579 to +1644), 202, 455
- Hemiplegia, 489–90
- Hemp, 213, 245
- Hepatopancreas, 208
- Heraclitus of Ephesus (c. –500), 360
- Heraclius (Byzantine emperor) r. +610 to +641, 327, 390
- Herat, 409

- Herbs
 healing properties of, 342
 of immortality, 329, 481
- Herder, J. G. (German poet, +1744 to 1803), 502
- Hermann of Carinthia, or Dalmatia (translator, fl. +1140), 403, 412 (e)
- Hermann, A. (1), 349
- Hermann, Philipp (Paracelsian chemist, fl. +1552), 98
- Hermes
 regarded as an inhabitant of China, 412
 supposed tomb of, 369
- Hermes-Agathodaemon, writings attributed to, 327, 344, 426
- Hermetic philosophy and literature, 333 (a), 409, 426, 429 (b), 502
- Herodotus (—440), 338, 433
- Herrengrund, 203 (e)
- Hesychasts, 501 (c)
- Hexagrams (*kua*), 70–1, 79, 210, 223, 232, 250, 255, 265–6, 267–8, 270, 278, 361, 388, 471
- Hickman molecular still, 101, 102
- St Hildegard of Bingen (+1098 to +1180), 367
- 'Hillside' kilns, 118
- Hilton-Simpson, M. W. (1), 106, 107, 130
- 'Him of the Fish'. See al-Miṣrī
- 'Him of the Horns'. See Alexander the Great
- Himalaya Mtns., 507
- Himyaritic language, 480
- Hindi dialect, 352
- Hindu Kush Mtns., 422
- Hindus, 463
- Hindustani language, 352
- Hippocrates, 60, 491, 493
- Hippocrates Chemicus* (Tachenius), 433 (j)
- Hippocratic Corpus, 326 (b), 350
- Hippocratic–Galenic humours, 459, 460
- St Hippolytus of Rome (heresiologist, d. +235), 124, 385 (e), 399
- Hirth, F. (25), 451
- Hirth, F. & Rockhill, W. W. (1), 149
- Hispalensis, Johannes (translator, fl. c. +1140), 368
- Historia Animalium* (Aristotle), 350
- Historia Vitae et Mortis* (Francis Bacon), 496 (g), 497 (c), 498 (a)
- Historical Classic. See *Shu Ching*
- Historical Collections. See *Thung Chih*
- Historical Records. See *Shih Chi*
- Historiōn Archomenē* (Cedrenus), 345 (a)
- Historischkritische Untersuchung der Alchemie* (Wiegleb), 324
- History of the Early Han Dynasty. See *Chien Han Shu*
- History of the Later Han Dynasty. See *Hou Han Shu*
- History of the Northern Dynasties. See *Pei Shih*
- History of the (Northern) Wei Dynasty. See *Wei Shu*
- History of the Sui Dynasty. See *Sui Shu*
- History of the Sung Dynasty. See *Sung Shih*
- History of Wine. See *Chiu Shih*
- Ho-chien (S.W. Hopei), saltpetre industry at, 192, 193
- Ho Ping-Yü (15), 4; (18), 4
- Ho Ping-Yü & Needham, J. (2), 309, 311, 317 (3), 1
- Hoefer, F., 350, 391
- Hoffmann, G., 347, 348, 350
- Hokan Chi, 393 (l)
- Holland, 153
- Holmyard, E. J., 368; (13), 369; (5, 15), 404; (17), 425
- 'Homilies' (Pseudo-Clement of Rome), 343 (b)
- Hommel, W. (1), 62, 63, 64, 98
- Homogenea and Heterogenea*, 153
- Homs, 410
- Homunculus, 396, 487, 490
- Honan Chhēng Shih I Shu* (Remaining Records of Discourses of the Chhēng brothers of Honan), 299 (d)
- Honan Chhēng Shih Tshui Yen* (Authentic Statements of the Chhēng brothers of Honan), 299 (f)
- Honey, 297, 320
- Honzō-Wamyō* (Synonymic Materia Medica with Japanese Equivalents), 441
- Hookah, 165
- Hoover, H. C. & Hoover, L. H., 179
- Hopkins, L. C. (26), 51; (17, 18), 381
- Horn, burnt to keep away leopards and tigers, 311
- Dr Hornbook, 434 (j)
- Hōsheng (=Hermes), 426 (g)
- Hospitals, 398, 410
- 'Hot-plate', 14, 15, 51
- Hou Han Shu* (History of the Later Han Dynasty), 336
- Hou Kuang-Chao, 192
- Houris, 480 (e)
- Hsi Chhi Tshung Hua* (Western Pool Collected Remarks), 188
- Hsi Chhing Ku Chien* (Catalogue of Ancient Mirrors (and Bronzes of the Imperial Collection in the Library of Western Serenity), 51
- Hsi-Hsia (State), 66, 67
- Hsi Tsung (Thang emperor, r. +873 to +886), 417
- Hsi Tzhu (Great Appendix of the *I Ching*), 462
- Hsi Wang Mu (goddess), 414
- Hsi yü* (the Western, i.e. Central Asian, countries), 139 (e)
- Hsi Yü Thu Chi* (Illustrated Record of the Western Countries), 440
- Hsi Yü Wēn Chien Lu* (Things Seen and Heard in the Western Countries), 442
- Hsiao* (nitre), 179 ff.
- Hsiao* Ping (Thang pharmaceutical writer, fl. c. +775), 440
- Hsiao shih*, 181, 182, 183, 184 fl., 188–90, 194
 identified as saltpetre, 194
 therapeutic effects of, 185
- Hsiao Ta-Hêng (Ming human geographer, +1594), 148
- Hsiao-thun culture, 27

INDEX

719

- Hsiao tshao* (little trough), 144
Hsieh Phu (Discourse on Crustacea), 208
Hsien (immortals), 211, 480, 507, 508
Hsien (steamer), 25, 27–8, 29, 30, 33, 81, 97
Hsien-Lo. See Siam
Hsien-Yuan Huang Ti Shui Ching Yao Fa (Medicinal Methods of the Aqueous [Solutions] Manual of Hsien-Yuan, the Yellow Emperor), 169
Hsin (dynasty), 162, 164
Hsin Hsiu Pén Tshao (Newly Reorganised Pharmacopoeia), 139, 140, 159 (d), 182, 186, 197, 200, 203, 299 (c), 440
Hsin Wu Tai Shih (New History of the Five Dynasties Period), 441
Hsing Chhêng Chi (Memoirs of my Official Journey), 442
Hsing Ching (The Star Manual), 381
Hsing-hua Fang, Sian, excavations at, 26
Hsing-hua Tshun, near Tayuan, 149, 150, 151
Hsing Li Ching I (Essential Ideas of the Neo-Confucian School of Philosophers), 299
Hsiu. See Lunar mansions
Hsiu Chen Shih Shu (Collection of Ten Tractates and Treatises on the Regeneration of the Primary Vitalities), 12 (f), 17 (c)
Hsiu Lien Ta Tan Yao Chih (Essential Instructions for the Preparation of the Great Elixir), 3, 45, 266 (d)
Hsiu Tan Miao Yung Chih Li Lun (A Discussion of the Marvellous Functions and Perfect Principles of the Practice of the Enchymoma), 265 (c), 268 (b), 281 (f)
Hsiung-huang shui (aqueous solution of realgar), 170
Hsiung Tsung-Li (Yuan encyclopaedist, fl. c. +1301), 112
Hsü Chih-Tshai (pharmacist, c. +565), 241
Hsü Hui (Taoist, +341 to c. +370), 213, 214, 219
Hsü Mai (Taoist alchemist, +4th century), 214, 215, 218
Hsü Mi (leader in the Mao Shan school of Taoism, +303 to +373), 213–4, 215, 218, 219
Hsü Ming-Tao (Taoist alchemical writer, late +12th century), 2
Hsü Po Wu Chih (Continuation of the ‘Record of the Investigation of Things’), 208, 315
Hsü Shen (lexicographer, c. +120), 445
Hsü Ta-Chhun (Chhing historian of medicine, fl. +1757), 336
Hsü Yo (mathematician, fl. c. +190), 464 (a)
Hsiüan chen kuei (suspended needle casing), 19
Hsiüan Chieh Lu (Mysterious Antidotarium), 393 (l)
Hsiüan-Ho Po Ku Thu Lu (Hsiüan-Ho Reign-period Illustrated Record of Ancient Objects), 51 (b)
Hsiüan Ming Fén Chuan (On the Mysterious Bright Powder [sodium sulphate]), 183
Hsiüan thai ting (suspended-womb vessel), 17
Hsüan Tsung (Thang emperor, r. +713 to +755), 183
Hsüeh Yü (1), 176
Hsiün (ten-day period), 281 (b)
Hsün Chhing (philosopher, c. –240), 308
Hu (Sogdian or Persian people and things), 418 (a), 440
Hu Kang Tzu (the Fox-Hard Master), 80, 188, 302 (e)
Hu merchants. See Merchants
Hu Pén Tshao (Pharmaceutical Natural History of the Westerners [Persians, Indians]), 421
Hu Ssu-Hui (Yuan nutritionist, fl. +1330), 140, 157
Mr Hu’s Well-Tested Advice to Posterity. See *Hushi Keiken Ikun*
Hu Yen (pharmaceutical and chemical writer, Yuan or early Ming), 60
Hua chhih (lit. ‘radiant pool’; technical term for baths of acetic acid and potassium nitrate), 5 (a), 21, 171, 177, 256
Hua Jen. See ‘Changer’
Hua Kung (Taorist adept, +6th century), 207
Hua Shan, 420
Hua shih (‘fluxite’), 270
Hua yang Kuan (Effulgent Yang Abbey), 214–5
laboratory near, 219
Huai R., 189
Huai Nan Tzu (The Book of (the Prince of) Huai-Nan), 57 (d), 207, 224, 226, 231, 252 (b), 253, 280 (a), 310, 330, 362, 373
Huai Nan Wan Pi Shu (Ten Thousand Infallible Arts of the Prince of Huai-Nan), 45, 202, 310–1, 312, 314, 315, 325, 330 (b)
Huan (cyclical processes for the making of elixirs), 453
Huan Tan Chou Hou Chüeh (Oral Instructions on Handy Formulae for Cyclically Transformed Elixirs), 3, 34, 232 (e), 274 (a)
Huan Tan Chung Hsien Lun (Pronouncements of the Company of the Immortals on Cyclically Transformed Elixirs), 227, 261 (a), 274
Huan Tan Nei Hsiang Chin Yo Shih (Golden Key to the Physiological Aspects of the Regenerative Enchymoma), 265, 268 (b)
Huan Tan Pi Chüeh Yang Chhih-Tzu Shen Fang (The Wondrous Art of Nourishing the (Divine) Embryo by the use of the secret Formula of the Regenerative Enchymoma), 2, 292 (f)
Huang Chhao (leader of peasant rebellion, +878), 417
Huang Chhu-Phing (alchemist, +4th century), 175
Huang chiu (yellow rice wine), 148
Huang-hsien, bronze *ting* from, 30
Huang Hua (elixir-maker, –2nd century), 330
Huang kuei (yellow casing), 19
Huang Pai Ching (Mirror of (the Art of) the Yellow and the White), 474 (f)
Huang Shan Tzu (alchemist, probably of the Han period), 244

- Huang Thien Shang-Chhing Chin Chhiueh Ti Chün Ling Shu Tzu-Wén Shang Ching* (Exalted Canon of the Imperial Lord of the Golden Gates, Divinely Written in Purple Script; a Huang-Thien Shang-Chhing Scripture), 217 (d)
- Huang Ti (the Yellow Emperor), 135, 465
- Huang-Ti Chiu Ting Shen Tan Ching Chüeh* (The Yellow Emperor's Canon of the Nine-Vessel Spiritual Elixir, with Explanations), 2, 168, 172, 173, 174, 175, 186, 218 (a), 219 (a), 231, 246 (a), 247 (a), 255–6, 279, 302
- Huang Ti Nei Ching, Su Wén* (The Yellow Emperor's Manual of Corporeal Medicine), 201, 307 (d)
- Huang Tzu-Chhing (1), 68, 70, 352
- Huang Tzu-Chhing & Chao Yün-Tshung (1), 135
- Huang ya kuei* (yellow sprout casing), 19
- Huang yeh* ('the smelting of the yellow', alchemy), 242 (b)
- Huang ying* (probably a form of selenite), 270
- Huangfu Mi (physician and pharmacist, +215 to +282), 185
- Huchhui Tzu-Lin, 359
- Hufeland, Christopher (German writer on medical hygiene and macrobiotics, fl. +1796), 502
- Hugh of Santalla (translator, +12th century), 368, 403
- Hughes, E. R. (1), 307
- Hui chien* ('ash-natron'), 181
- Hui-Shêng* (Buddhist pilgrim, c. +518), 354
- Huichol Indians. *See* Tribal peoples
- Hülagü Khan (first Ilkhan of Persia, r. +1256 to +1265), 417
- Human sacrifices. *See* Sacrifices
- Humbert, J. P. L., 431
- von Humboldt, Alexander, 347, 438
- Humours. *See* Hippocratic–Galenic humours
- Hun* (Yang 'souls'), 228 (b), 230, 470
- Hun-tun* (primordial chaos). *See* Chaos
- Hun-tun ho* (closed chaos-vessel), 36, 285
- Hun-tun shen shih* (world-of-chaos magical reaction-chamber), 10
- Hun-tun ting* (world-of-chaos vessel), 18
- Hunain ibn Ishāq al-'Ibādī (translator, +809 to +877), 411, 436 (g), 449 (a), 483
- Hung Chhien Ju Hei Chhien Chieh* (Oral Instructions on the Entry of the Red Lead into the Black Lead), 232 (e), 274 (a)
- Hung Fan (Great Plan) chapter of the *Shu Ching* (q.v.)
- Hung Mai (Sung writer, +1123 to +1202), 208
- Hung ting* (sublimatory vessel, 'rainbow-heater'), 45, 51
- Hungary, 111
- Hunza, 507
- Huo chiu* ('fire-wine'), 135
- Huo hou*. *See* Fire phasing
- Huo phén* (fire-bowl, water-bath), 34
- Huo ting* (heating reaction-vessel), 33, 35
- Hushi Keiken Ikun* (Mr Hu's [Christopher Hufeland] Well-Tested Advice to Posterity), 502 (c)
- Huxley, Aldous, 487
- Hydrates, 183
- Hydrochloric acid, 21, 44, 174, 178, 195, 196, 197, 200, 433, 435, 448, 506
- Hydrogen, 179, 295
converted into positrons and helium, 384
- Hydrogen sulphide, 188
- Hydronium ions, 179
- Hydrosulphide, 176
- Hygisticon* (Lessius), 502
- Hygiene, 492–3, 501, 502, 508
- Hygrometer. *See* Charcoal hygrometer
- Hymn of the Pearl, or, of the Soul, 377 (h)
- I Chien Chih* (Strange Stories from I-Chien), 190, 208
- I Ching* (Book of Changes), 15, 70, 210, 223, 248, 250, 253 (c), 256 (a), 265, 267, 275, 277, 289 (c), 306 (c), 361, 379, 388, 462, 471
- I Hsin Fang* (The Heart of Medicine), 159
- I Hsüeh Yuan Liu Lun* (On the Origins and Progress of Medical Service), 336
- I Su Chi* (Records of Barbarian Customs), 148
- I Wei Chhien Tso Tu* (Apocryphal Treatise on the 'Book of' Changes'; a Penetration of the Regularities of Chhien), 465
- Iamblichus (Hellenistic proto-chemist +3rd century), 327, 473 (h)
- Iaō (name of Gnostic archon or demiurge), 376
- Iatrochemical Natural History. *See* *Wai Tan Pén Tshao*
- Iatro-chemistry, 191, 198, 297, 331, 502, 505, 507
terminology of, 190
- Iaxartes. *See* Jaxartes
- al-'Ibādī. *See* Hunain ibn Ishāq . . .
- Ibn abī al-'Azāqir. *See* Abū Ja'far Muḥammad . . .
- Ibn abi Bakr al-Khwārizmī, Abū Ya'qūb (encyclopaedist, +1160 to +1229), 424 (k)
- Ibn abī Tāhir Tāyfū al-Khurāsānī (historian, fl. +819 to +833), 425 (d)
- Ibn abi Uṣaybi'a (physician and historian of medicine, +1203 to +1270), 194
- Ibn abi Ya'qūb al-Nadīm al-Warrāq al-Baghdādī ('the stationer' of Baghdad, bibliographer, d. +995), 344, 389, 411
- Ibn Aidamur. *See* al-Jildakī
- Ibn al-Akfānī. *See* al-Sachāwī, Muḥammad . . .
- Ibn Arfa 'Ra's al-Andalusī (alchemist, d. +1197), 402, 412
- Ibn al-Baitār, Abū Muḥammad al-Mālaqī (botanist and pharmacist, d. +1248), 128 (a), 194, 432 (b)
- Ibn Bakhtawayhī, 194
- Ibn Barmak, Khālid (vizier, fl. +765), 424
- Ibn Bishrūn, Abū Bakr (alchemist, +10th century), 480–1, 483, 494
- Ibn al-Faqīh (geographer, fl. +902), 391
- Ibn Hauqal, Abū al-Qāsim (geographer, fl. +943 to +977), 424 (d)
- Ibn Ḥayyān. *See* Jābir . . .

INDEX

721

- Ibn Jābirūl, Abū Ayyūb Sulaimān ibn Yahyā. *See* Solomon ben Judah . . .
- Ibn Kaṭīr al-Farghānī, Abū al-'Abbās (astronomer, fl. +861), 423 (b)
- Ibn Khaldūn, 'Abd al-Rahmān ibn Muḥammad (sociologist and historian, +1332 to +1406), 389, 404, 405, 408, 471, 480, 486
- Ibn Khallikān, Shams al-Dīn al-Barmakī (biographical historian, +1211 to +1282), 390
- Ibn Khurdādhbih, Abū al-Qāsim (geographer, c. +825 to c. 912), 451
- Ibn Marwān, Ḥukaim ibn 'Isā (last official head of the Ṣābiāns, d. +944), 429
- Ibn Maṭar, al-Hajjāj ibn Yūsuf (translator, fl. +786 to +833), 411
- Ibn Muḥammed al-Thālibī, Abū Ishaq Aḥmad (Koranic commentator, c. +950 to c. +1020), 425 (c)
- Ibn Mūsā al-Kwārizmī, Abū 'Abd Allāh Muḥammad. *See* al-Khwārizmī . . .
- Ibn Qurrāh, Thābit. *See* Thābit ibn Qurrāh
- Ibn Qutayba, Abū Muḥammad (historian, +828 to +889), 475
- Ibn Sahl al-Balkhī, Abū Zayd Aḥmad (geographer, +849 to +934), 424 (d)
- Ibn al-Samh, 480 (g)
- Ibn Sīnā, Abū 'Alī al-Huṣain (physician and naturalist, +980 to +1037; 'the Third Master'), 362, 402, 403, 405, 423, 457, 491
- Ibn al-Tilmidh, Abū al-Ḥasan (physician, d. +1165), 436 (e)
- Ibn Umail, Muḥammad al-Ṣādiq al-Tamīmī (alchemist, c. +900 to +960), 366, 373 (g), 378, 379 (c), 399, 401, 404, 482
- Ibn Wahb al-Baṣrī (merchant in China, +876), 417
- Ibn al-Waḥshiyya al-Nabaṭī (agriculturist, fl. c. +930), 392, 449, 453 (d), 486
- Ibrāhīm ibn Adham (religious mystic, first of the Sufis, d. c. 777), 424 (c)
- Ichow, 300
- Idea Medicinae Philosophicae* (Severinus), 508
- Ideographic-alphabetic language barrier, 415
- al-Idrīsī, al-Sharīf, Abū 'Abd Allāh (geographer, +1099 to +1166), 436 (e)
- al-Ikhmīmī, 'Uthmān ibn Suwayd (alchemical writer, c. +900), 393 (n), 399
- al-Ikhmīmī. *See* al-Miṣrī, Abū al-Fayḍ . . .
- al-Iksir* (elixir), 472, 489
provenance of the word, 473–4
- Iliad*, 363
- Illicium verum* (star anise), 118
- Illustrated Manual on the Subduing of Mercury. *See* *Fu Hung Thu*
- Illustrated Manual on Powders. *See* *Fēn Thu*
- Illustrated Pharmacopoeia. *See* *Pēn Tshao Thu Ching*
- Illustrated Record of the Western Countries. *See* *Hsi Yü Thu Chi*
- Illustrations and Commentary for the 'Dilations upon Pharmaceutical Natural History'. *See* *Thu Ching Yen I Pēn Tshao*
- Illustrations for the 'Main Essentials of the Metallous Enchymoma; the true Gold Elixir'. *See* *Chin Tan Ta Yao Thu*
- Illustrations of Processes and Manufactures. *See* *Nihon Sankai Meibutsu Zue*
- 'Ilm al-Khawāṣṣ. *See* Science of Properties
- 'Ilm al-Mizān. *See* Science of the Balance
- 'Ilm al-Takwīn. *See* Science of Generation
- 'Ilm al-Tilasmat. *See* Science of Theurgy and Apotropaics
- Image-makers, 488
- Images, to stimulate the action of the cosmic forces upon the microcosm of the furnace, 292
- The Imāms, 390 (h), 396
- Imhotep, 341 (a)
- Imitation gems, 333 (c)
- The Immaculate Girl. *See* Su Nü
- Immortality, 211, 250
means of obtaining, 211, 218, 232, 236, 238
alchemical, 303
associated with artificial gold, 330, 456
See also Material immortality and longevity
- Immortals, 217, 232, 237, 239, 262, 303
access to certain substances within the earth, 233
land of the, 414
visitations by, 213–4, 215, 241
- Imperial workshops, 330
- Important Arts for the People's Welfare. *See* *Chi Min Yao Shu*
- Important Medical Formulae and Prescriptions revealed by a Provincial Governor. *See* *Wai Thai Pi Yao*
- Imports, 158, 160
- Impotence, 482
- Imuth, 341
- In Dioscoridem Corollariorum Libri Quinque* (Barbaro), 350 (d)
- Incense, 83, 133, 180, 453 (d)
- Incense-sticks, and time-keeping, 167
- Incorruptibility of corpses, 420
- Increase of surface, principle of, 44
- Incubation
of an artificial foetus, 396
of hen's eggs, 293, 297, 434
- India, 97, 157, 165, 326, 333, 373, 388, 389, 401, 423, 425, 449, 485, 497–8
alchemy, 108, 236, 412
Arabic culture and, 408, 409, 490
atomic theories, 308, 374, 388
chemical technology, 196
chemistry, 198
distillation
oldest certain reference to, in an Indian text, 131
of wine, 131–2
- magic square, 464
- perpetual motion, 487
- religion, 379
- religious opposition to wine, 132
- spontaneous generation theories, 486
- stills, 80, 104–6

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

722

INDEX

- India (*cont.*)
 sublimation of camphor, 49
 vegetable elixir, 481
- Indian medical ideas, transmitted to China, 336
- Indian Ocean, 149, 417
- Indian prisoners, presented to the Chinese emperor, 197
- Indispensable Knowledge for the Chymical Elaboratory. *See Tan Fang Hsü Chih*
- Indo-China, 333
 cultures of, 146
- Indo-European linguistics, 350
- Indus Valley, 333
- Industrial Arts and Technology in Old Japan.
See Nihon no Sangyō Gijutsu
- Industrial diseases, 80
- Infectivity, 308 (c)
- Inflammation, treatment with sal ammoniac, 440
- Informal Records of Famous Physicians. *See Ming I Pieh Lu*
- Information on What is Beyond the Passes. *See Ling Wai Tai Ta*
- Inks, 199, 299, 302, 452
 Chinese, 296
 invisible, 315
- Inner Elixir. *See Alchemy, physiological*
- Inner Writings of the Jade-Purity Heaven. *See Yü Ching Nei Shu*
- Inorganic substances
 maturing of, 297
 purification of, 177
 solubilisation of, 167–71, 185
- Inquisitio Legitima de Calore et Frigore* (Francis Bacon), 152 (g)
- Inscriptions, 150, 335, 372, 444
 Chou, 446
- Insects, 209
 and charm to make people tell the truth, 311
 generation of, from grain, 314
- Insomnia, 453 (d)
- Instantaneous elixirs, 434 (j)
- Interaction, 309
- Interchangeability between water, air and fire, 360
- Interconversion
 of metals and sulphides, 317
 of vapours and solids, 361–2
- Intercultural borrowing. *See Cultural contacts*
- Internal diseases. *See Diseases*
- Intersexes, 320 (b)
- Intestinal disinfectants, 191
- Intimate Biography of Emperor Wu of the Han.
See Han Wu Ti Nei Chuan
- Introduction to Astrology. *See Kitāb al-Mudhakārat*
- Inventors, lists of, 425 (e)
- Invertebrates, 209
- Invisible ink, 315
- Iodine, 178
- Ion exchange, 201 (a)
- Ionic bonds, 321
- Ions, 173
- Ios*, meanings of, 482–3
- Iran. *See Persia*
- Iranian ruling families granted asylum at the Chinese imperial court, 416
- Iraq, 397, 414, 418
- al-'Irāqī, Abū al-Qāsim al-Simāwī (alchemist, fl. c. +1270), 129, 404, 458, 482
- Ireland, peasant-farmers of, 110–1
- Iron, 173, 201, 202, 290, 313, 364, 387, 469
 alloys of. *See Alloys*
 amalgamation with mercury, 317
 ‘killing’ of, 198
 nationalisation of production of, 147
 rusting, 315
 salts of, 299
 solubilisation of, 174
 transmutation into silver and gold, 451
 wrought-, 452
- Iron alum, solubilisation of, 201
- Iron-casting. *See Cast iron*
- Iron oxide, 173, 294
- Iron sulphate, 173, 199, 201
- Iron sulphide, 177
- Iron vessels, 23–4, 58–9, 294
- Iron wire (*thieh hsien*), used for binding parts of apparatus together, 22 (a), 40
- Ironstone, 206
- ‘Irrigation’ techniques, 263, 281, 284
- Irshād al-Qāṣid ilā Asnā al-Maqāṣid* (Guide for the Struggling, on the Highest Questions), 481
- Isaac of Harrān (Nestorian bishop, +8th century), 476–7
- al-İsfahānī, Hamza (historian, +897 to +967), 426 (d), 476 (a)
- Ishāra ilā Fasād 'Ilm Aḥkām al-Nujūm* (Demonstration of the Futility of Astrology), 402
- Ishinhō*. *See I Hsin Fang*
- Isidorus (Gnostic theologian, son of Basilides, +3rd century), 346
- Isis (Egyptian goddess), 347
- Isis (+3rd-century woman proto-chemist), 313, 327
- Iskandar. *See Alexander the Great*
- Islam, 157, 165, 190, 227, 409, 478, 485, 490, 507
 chemistry in, 43
 conquests, 388, 416
 and the ‘Moor’s head’, 130–1
 still types, 107
- Islamic scholars, and contact with China, 414, 422 ff.
- Islamic science, 400
- Isles of the Blest, 498 (c)
- Ismā'il ibn Ja'far (d. +760, designated as seventh imām, but set aside in favour of his younger brother Mūsā al-Kāzim), 396
- Ismā'ili movement, 376 (h), 396, 397
- al-İştakhrī, Abū Ishāq al-Fārisī (geographer, mid +10th century), 424 (d), 433 (m)
- al-İştakhrī (police chief of Baghdad, +933), 429
- Isthmeos, Johannes (aurifactor, c. +504), 345
- Istorum*, meaning of, 492

INDEX

723

- Italy, 124, 498
I'tidāl (perfect proportion, or equilibrium), 477
 (b), 481 (c). See also *Krasis*
 Ivory, 332
- Jābir ibn Ḥayyān (alchemist, perhaps c. +720 to +815), 389, 390, 391, 392, 405, 409, 425, 470, 480, 484, 488, 491, 492, 494, 508
 relation of 'Geber' to, 391
- Jābirian Corpus, 33, 128, 318, 366, 369, 390, 391–3, 395–6, 397, 398, 399, 403, 408, 429, 430, 431, 432, 435, 436–7, 441, 449, 451, 454, 457, 459–61, 468, 471, 477, 479, 480, 485
 relation with the Ismā'ili movement, 396
 sources of, 408, 409, 472
- Jābirian numbers, 462, 468
- Jackson, R. D. & van Bavel, C. H. M. (1), 98, 99
- Jacobite (church), 411, 476
- Jade, 205, 207, 210, 216, 221
 body-eases of, 21
 caerulean, 449
 rings, 381, 383
- Ja'far al-Balkhi, Abū Ma'shar (astrologer-astronomer d. +886), 424 (e)
- Ja'far al-Sādiq (sixth Imām, +699 to +765), 389, 390, 471, 472
- Ja'far ibn al-Ḥusain (chemical writer, +9th or +10th century), 450
- Jagellonian Library, Cracow, 93, 95
- al-Jāḥīz, Abū 'Uthmān 'Amr ibn Baṭr (philosopher, zoologist and scientific encyclopaedist, d. +869), 448 (a)
- Jahn, K. & Franke, H., 413
- Ja'mā'a *Fīthāghūras* (compendium of Pythagoras), 399 (a)
- Jāmāsp, 415
- Jāmi'i-al-*Tawārikh* (Collection of Histories), 138, 413 (b)
- Japan and the Japanese, 323, 418, 421, 441, 489, 502
 camphor sublimation, 46, 49
 ferrous sulphate works, 200
 language, 352
 saltpetre works, 193
 stills. *See* Still
 temperature stabiliser (*daki*), 41
 wine, 148
- Jasmine, 160
- al-Jaubaři, 'Abd al-Rahīm al-Dimashqī (alchemical writer, +13th century), 403
- Jaxartes river, 370, 407, 409, 422
- Jen Shih-Chün (c. +780), 24
- Jeremiah (Prophet), 179
- Jesuits, 115, 297, 384, 503
- Jesus, 378, 387
- Jet, 235
- Jewel Necklace of Materia Medica. *See* *Bhaiṣajya-ratnāvali*
- Jewels. *See* Gems
- Jewish alchemy, 345 (c)
- Jewish culture, 313, 461
- Jewish legends, 341
- Jewish physicians, 447–8
- Jewish proto-chemists, 345, 351
- Jewish-Syriac literature, 377
- Jewish Wisdom Literature, 367
- Jīh Hua (Tzu) Chu Chia Pēn Tshao* (The Sun-Rays Master's Pharmaceutical Natural History . . .), 200, 441
- Jīh Yüeh Hsüan Shu Lun* (Essay upon the Sun, Moon, and the Dark Axis), 249
- al-Jildakī, 'Alī ibn Aidamur (alchemist, d. +1342), 304 (a), 404, 454, 482–3
- Jinn*. *See* *Djinn*
- Job of Edessa (Ayyūb al-Ruhāwī al-Abrash, Syriac encyclopaedist of science and philosophy, fl. +817, to +832), 370
- Johannitus. *See* Hunain ibn Ishāq al-'Ibadī
- John XXII (Pope, r. +1316 to +1334), 498
- John of Antioch (historian, fl. +610), 340
- John the Archpriest (proto-chemist, +5th century), 196
- St John the Baptist, 383, 384
- John of Gaddesden (physician, +14th century), 60
- John of Rupescissa (alchemist +14th century), 122, 499, 507
- Jonson, Ben, 242, 278, 297, 453, 499
- Juba of Mauritania (tributary king and learned historian, c. –50 to +50), 325
- Jujube date (fruit), 217
- Julius Africanus (historian, proto-chemist and naturalist, d. +232), 124, 327, 339
- Juncker, Johann (chemical physician, d. +1759), 321
- Jundi-shāpūr, 411
 academy or university at, 410
 hospital at, 410
- Jung, C. G., 388
- Jungius, Joachim (chemist and naturalist, +1587 to +1657), 202
- Jupiter (planet), 226, 228, 428
- Jupiter Stations, 272
- Justinian I (Byzantine emperor, r. +527 to +565), 410 (c)
- Justinian's *Corpus Juris Civilis*, 332
- Kabbalah, 385 (c), 503 (a, n), 505
- Kahle, P. (7, 8), 451
- Kalinite (potassium alum), 225
- Kalmuk still, 103–4
- Kalpas* and *Mahākalpas*, 428 (d)
- Kan Chhi Shih-liu Chuan Chin Tan* (The Sixteen-fold Cyclically Transformed Gold Elixir prepared by the 'Responding to the Chhi' Method), 3, 10, 18, 56
- Kan Ying (traveller, +97), 332
- Kan Ying Ching* (On Stimuli and Responses in Nature), 310, 314
- Kan Ying Lei Tshung Chih* (Record of the Mutual Resonances of Things), 309
- Kansu, 137, 185
- Kansu Provincial Museum, Lanchow, 32

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

724

INDEX

- Kao-chhang. *See* Turfan
 Kao Chhi (alchemist, date unknown), 169
 Kao Chih-Hsi (1), 53
 Kao Hsien-Chih (Korean general, c. +750), 416
 Kao-liang grain, used in making spirits, 64, 66, 68, 115, 150
 Kao Tsung (Thang emperor, r. +650 to +683), 390
 Kaolin, 450
 Kara-. *See* Qara
 Karachi, 131
 Karakorum range, Himalayas, 507
Kashf al-Zunūn (Discovery of the Thoughts), 471 (i)
 Kashgar, 422, 431 (b)
 al-Kātī, Ibn 'Abd al-Malik al-Šālihī al-Khwārizmī (+1034), 15 (d), 83, 402, 424 (i), 436 (e) 469 (k)
 al-Kātib (the Secretary). *See* Abū 'Abd Allāh Muhammad ibn Aḥmad ibn Yūsuf al-Khwārizmī
 Kekule, F. A. (organic chemist, 1829 to 1896), 385
 Kelly, Isabel (1, 2), 109
 Teacher Kēng (Thang woman alchemist at court, +9th century), 364
Kēng Hsin Ching (Book of the Realm of Kēng and Hsin, i.e. the noble metals), 331
Kēng Tao Chi (Collection of Procedures on the Golden Art), 3, 19, 264 (a), 284, 292 (f)
Kērotakis (Greek reflux distillation apparatus), 74–6, 81, 105, 374
 Kestoi (Julius Africanus), 124 (b), 339
 Kettles, distillation in, 111
 Key to the Sciences. *See* *Mafātih al-'Ulūm* and *Miftāh al-'Ulūm*
Khai-Pao Pén Tshao (Pharmaceutical Natural History of the Khai-Pao reign-period), 184 (h), 186
 Khālid ibn Ibrāhīm, Abū Dā'ūd (general, +751), 451
 Khālid ibn Yazīd ibn Mu'āwiya (prince, c. +665 to +704), 389–90, 405, 436
Khan kua (*Khan* trigram), 5 (b)
 Khang Thai (traveller and ambassador, c. +260), 337
Khao Kung Chi (Artificers' Record, a chapter of the *Chou Li*), 329
Khārsini ('Chinese arrow-head metal'), 33, 428, 429–32, 469, 483 (a)
 Khazars, 485 (b)
 al-Khāzinī, 'Abd al-Rahmān (physicist and chemist, fl. +1118), 128 (a)
 Kheti, son of Duauf, 348, 349
 al-Khitā'i, 'Umar ibn Aḥmad ibn 'Alī (geometer), 471
 Khiva, 333, 370, 409, 416, 422, 423
Khorasan, 408, 416, 422, 423, 425, 436 (e), 439 (a), 449
 al-Khurāsānī. *See* Abū Bakr 'Ali ibn Muḥammad . . .
 Khosrau Anūshirwān (Persian king, d. +569), 410
 Khotan, 438
 Khou Tsung-Shih (pharmaceutical naturalist, +1116), 241
 Khun-lun paradise, 217
 Khun-lun Shan, 438
 Khung Ying-Ta (Sui and Thang scholar and commentator, +574 to +648), 156, 458
 Khung Yuan-Fang (Han alchemist), 400
 Khunrath, Conrad (medical chemist, fl. +1594), 153
 al-Khurāsāni. *See* Ibn Abī Tāhir . . .
Khusjat Iblis ('devil's testicles'), 449
 Khūzistān, 410 (c)
 Khwarizm, 370, 409, 416, 422, 423, 424
 al-Khwārizmī, Abū 'Abd Allah Muḥammad ibn Mūsā (mathematician, c. +750 to c. +850), 424 (h)
 al-Khwārizmī. *See* Abū 'Abd Allah Muḥammad . . .; al-Kātī; Ibn Abī Bakr
al-Kimiya', 350 ff., 355, 405, 481
Kimiya' *al-Sā'āda* (The Elixir of Blessedness), 481 (e)
 Kinās the Pneumatologist, 427 (f)
Kincob, 352
 al-Kindī, Abū Yūsuf Ya'qūb ibn Ishāq ibn al-Šabbāh (chemist, +800 to +867), 49, 127, 128, 129, 147, 397–8, 469, 491
 King, C. W. (2), 375
 Kinnesrin, 410
 Kinship of the Three. *See* *Tshan Thing Chhi*
 Kinship of the Three and the Book of Changes, with Commentary. *See* *Chou I Tshan Thung Chhi Chu*
Kitāb al-Aḥjār (Lapidary, in Jābirian Corpus), 435 (d)
Kitāb al-Aḥjār (Lapidary, of Pseudo-Aristotle), 431 (h), 437 (b), 448
Kitāb al-Aḥjār 'alā Ra'y Balinās (Opinions of Balinās on Mineral Substances). *See* *Kutub . . .*
Kitāb 'Aja'ib al-Makhlūqāt . . . (Marvels of Creation; often called, Cosmography), 430
Kitāb al-Ā'lāq al-Nafisa (Precious Bags of Travelling Provisions), 391
Kitāb al-Ā'rād (Book of Accidents), 409 (c)
Kitāb al-Ashkāl (Book of the (Seven) Chines), 424 (d)
Kitāb al-Ashkāl al-Tabī'iyya (Book of Natural Figures), 488 (h)
Kitāb al-Āṣnām al-Sab'a (Book of the Seven Idols), 427 (d)
Kitāb Āsrār al-Shams wa'l-Qamar (Book of the Secrets of the Sun and Moon), 486 (g)
Kitāb al-Bāhit (Book of the Surprising), 449
Kitāb al-Baḥit (Book of the Search), 393
Kitāb al-Balāgha (Book of Attainment), 435 (f)
Kitāb Balaniyūs al-Iḥākīm fi'l 'Ilal (Book of Apollonius the Wise on the Causes), 369
Kitāb al-Bawl (Book of Urine), 435 (e)
Kitāb al-Bayḍ (Book of Eggs), 435 (e)
Kitāb al-Dam (Book of Blood), 435 (e)
Kitāb al-Dhahab (Book of Gold), 480 (c)
Kitāb al-Dhakhā'ir wa'l-Tuhaf (Book of the Treasury of Precious Things), 390

INDEX

725

- Kitāb al-Furūsiya wa'l-Munāṣab al-Ḥarbiya* (Treatise on Horsemanship and Stratagems of War), 194
- Kitāb al-Fuṣūl al-Ītnai 'Ashar fi 'Ilm al-Ḥajar al-Mukarram* (Twelve Chapters on the Science of the Most Honourable Stone), 335
- Kitāb al-Ghasl* (Book of Washing, i.e. Purification), 429 (e), 457
- Kitāb Ghāyat al-Ḥakīm* (Book of the Aim of the Sage), 313, 427 (c), 486
- Kitāb al-Ḥabīb* (Book of the Friend), 344 (k), 399, 453 (e), 456, 469 (g, h, i), 470 (a, l), 471 (c), 484 (a)
- Kitāb al-Ḥadid* (Tractate on Iron), 431
- Kitāb al-Ḥajar* (Book of the Stone), 393
- Kitāb al-Ḥāsil* (Book of the Result), 459, 480
- Kitāb Hatch al-Astār* (Book of the Rending of Veils), 394 (c)
- Kitāb al-Ḥayawān* (Book of Animals), 435 (e)
- Kitāb al-Ḥayy* (Book of the Living), 369, 395 (e), 435
- Kitāb al-Ḥukūma* (Book of Government), 395 (d), 435
- Kitāb al-Īdāh al-Ma'rūf bi-Thalāthīn Kalima* (Book of Enlightenment . . .), 457
- Kitāb Ikrāj mā fi'l-Quwwa ilā'l-Fi'l* (Book of the Passage from Potentially to Actuality), 397 (c), 485 (h)
- Kitāb al-Īlm al-Muktaṣab fi Zirā'at al-Dhahab* (Book of Knowledge acquired concerning the Cultivation of Gold), 129 (f), 403 (d), 404, 482
- Kitāb al-Imāma wa'l-Siyāsa* (Book of the Religious and Civil Authority), 475
- Kitāb al-Ījāmi'* (Book of the Sum and Substance [of Alchemy]), 436 (d)
- Kitāb al-Ījāmi' fi al-Adwiyā al-Mufrada* (Book of the Assembly of Medical Simples), 194
- Kitāb al-Jauhar al-Nadir fi Ṣinā'at al-Iksir* (Book of the Brilliant Stone and the Preparation of the Elixir), 402
- Kitāb al-Kanz al-Afkhar wa'l-Sivr al-A'zam fi Taṣrif al-Ḥajar al-Mukarram* (Book of the Most Glorious Treasure and Greatest Secret on the Transmutation of the Philosopher's Stone), 129 (f)
- Kitāb al-Khamis* (Book of the Fifty), 429 (c)
- Kitāb al-Khārṣini* (Tractate on the Chinese Arrow-head Metal), 429
- Kitāb al-Khawāṣṣ* (Book of Properties), 429 (c)
- Kitāb al-Khawāṣṣ al-Kabir* (Greater Book of Properties), 393, 435 (d), 449 (i), 451 (c), 452, 479
- Kitāb Kīmiyā' al-'Iṭr wa'l-Taṣ'idāt* (Book of Perfume Chemistry and Distillations), 127, 128, 398
- Kitāb al-Lāhūt* (Book of Divine Grace), 435 (f), 472
- Kitāb al-Lauḥ al-Zumurrudi* ('Tabula Smaragdina), 368 (i)
- Kitāb al-Mā' al-Waraqī wa'l-Ard al-Najmiya* (Book of the Silvery Water and the Starry Earth), 373 (g), 401, 482
- Kitāb al-Ma'ārif* (Book of Knowledge in General), 475
- Kitāb al-Malaki* (Royal Book), 484 (h)
- Kitāb al-Masāḥīk wa'l-Mamālik* (Book of Roads and Provinces), 424 (d)
- Kitāb Maydān al-'Aql* (Book of the Arena of the Intelligence), 486 (d)
- Kitāb al-Mizān al-Ṣaghīr* (Lesser Book of the Balance), 461 (b), 463, 471 (a), 477, 486 (c)
- Kitāb al-Mudhākarāt* (Introduction to Astrology), 424 (e)
- Kitāb al-Mujarradāt* (Book of Abstractions), 399 (g)
- Kitāb al-Mukhtāṣar fi Kashf al-Asrār wa-Hatk al-Astār* (Choice Book of the Revelation of Secrets and the Tearing of Veils), 403
- Kitāb al-Mukhtaṣar fi Hisāb al-Ǧabr wa'l-Muqābala* (Epitome of the Calculation of Integration and Equation), 424 (h)
- Kitāb al-Mulk* (Book of Royalty), 469 (h)
- Kitāb al-Muqaddimāt* (Book of Introductions), 194
- Kitāb Muṣāḥḥahāt Ḥarbi* (Book of the Rectifications of Harbi), 480 (d)
- Kitāb al-Nabāt* (Book of Plants), 435 (e)
- Kitāb al-Nafs wa'l-Manfūs* (Book of the Anima and the Animate), 470 (j)
- Kitāb al-Naqd* (Book of Testing, or of Coinage), 451
- Kitāb Nukhbāt al-Dahr* (Book of the Selection of the Age [Cosmography]), 87 (c), 127, 437 (c)
- Kitāb al-Qamar al-Akbar* (Greatest Book of the Moon), 427 (d)
- Kitāb Qarāṭis al-Ḥakīm* (Book of Crates the Wise; or, the Physician), 389, 427 (d), 469 (h), 471 (c), 472 (c), 483
- Kitāb al-Rāhib* (Book of the Hermit), 480 (c)
- Kitāb al-Rahma al-Kabir* (Greater Book of Pity), 392, 435 (d), 470 (m), 473, 477, 478, 484 (e)
- Kitāb al-Rahma al-Ṣaghīr* (Lesser Book of Pity), 393, 436 (d)
- Kitāb Rawḥ al-Arwāḥ* (Book of the Repose of the Animi), 470 (i)
- Kitāb al-Rāwiq* (Book of the Filter), 451 (c), 487
- Kitāb Risālat Ja'far al-Ṣadiq fi 'Ilm al-Ṣanā'a wa'l-Ḥajar al-Mukarram* (Book of the Letters of Ja'far al-Sadiq on the Science of the Art and the Noble Stone), 391 (a)
- Kitāb al-Rūḥ* (Book of the Animus), 470 (i)
- Kitāb al-Rūḥ fi'l-Mawāzin* (Book of the Animus and the (Science of) Balance), 470 (i)
- Kitāb Rutbat al-Ḥakīm* (Book of the Sage's Step), 304 (a), 401
- Kitāb al-Sha'ar* (Book of Hair), 435
- Kitāb Shānāq fi al-Sumūm wa'l-Tariyāq* (Book of Canakya [Kantilya] on Poisons and Theriacs), 399
- Kitāb al-Shawāhid* (Book of Evidences), 427 (a)
- Kitāb al-Shifa'* (Book of the Remedy), 362, 402, 457 (j)

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:
Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

- Kitāb al-Sindhind* ([Lesser] Book of [Improved] Astronomical Tables based on the *Brāhma-sphuta Siddhānta*), 424 (h)
- Kitāb Sīr al-Asrār* (Book of the Secret of Secrets; Pseudo-Aristotle), 368, 484 (h), 494, 497 (a)
- Kitāb Sīr al-Asrār* (Book of the Secret of Secrets; al-Rāzī), 129 (e), 195 (d), 243 (a), 398, 436 (e), 484 (h)
- Kitāb Sīr al-Khalīqa wa-Ṣan'at al-Tabi'a* (Book of the Secret of Creation and the Art (of Reproducing) Nature), 369, 373, 395 (g), 425, 437 (b), 457, 461, 486
- Kitāb al-Sīr al-Makmūn* (Book of the Hidden Secret), 429 (f)
- Kitāb al-Sumūm* (Book of Poisons), 393 (r), 435 (d), 453 (d), 449
- Kitāb al-Sumūm wa-daf' Maḍāriḥā* (Book of Poisons and Antidotes), 393 (r), 399 (d), 453 (d)
- Kitāb Ṣūrat al-Ard* (Book of the Image of the Earth, mathematical geography), 424 (h)
- Kitāb al-Suyūb wa'l-Ma'jūnāt wa'l-Ghadār al-Sini* (Book on Ores, Electuaries and Chinese Clay), 450
- Kitāb al-Ṭabī'a al-Khāmisa* (Book of the Fifth Nature), 122 (b)
- Kitāb al-Ta'fin* (Book of Putrefaction), 486
- Kitāb al-Tajmi'* (Book of the Concentration), 396 (c), 435 (d), 461 (c), 477, 480 (c), 485, 486
- Kitāb al-Talkhiṣ* (Book of the Reduction), 394 (c)
- Kitāb al-Tasrif* (Book of the Transmutation, or, the Morphology), Jābirian alchemy, 396 (e)
- Kitāb al-Tasrif* (Compendium of Effectual Operations; or, Book of Concession [to those who have no other books available]), 128 (c)
- Kitāb al-Tawlid*. See *Peri Gennēsōs*
- Kitāb al-Ulūf* (Book of the Thousands), 412 (e)
- Kitāb Ustuqus al-Uss al-Thālith* (Third Book of the Elements of the Foundation), 480 (c)
- Kitāb Ustuqus al-Uss al-Thāni* (Second Book of the Elements of the Foundation), 369
- Kitāb Wafayāt al-A'yān* (Biographies of Eminent Men), 390 (c)
- Kitāb fi Wuju'b Ḫinā'at al-Kimiya'* (Book on the Necessity of Alchemy), 405
- Kitāb al-Wuzarā' al-Khamṣa li-Malik al-Hind* (Book of the Colloquies of the Five Viziers of the King of India), 482 (b)
- Kitāb al-Zibaq al-Gharbi* (Book of the Western Mercury), 471 (e), 478, 482, 484 (f)
- Kitāb al-Zibaq al-Sharqi* (Book of the Eastern Mercury), 470 (e), 484 (f)
- Kmj . t* (Book of Completion), 348–9
- Ko Hsüan (Taoist alchemist, fl. +238 to +250), 77–8
- Ko Hung (scholar and eminent Taoist alchemist, early +4th century), 3, 71, 134, 167, 168, 169, 194, 197, 202, 207, 213, 214, 218, 220, 225, 232, 243, 246, 250, 255, 268, 298, 331, 353, 380, 440, 447, 470, 478, 491, 494, 496 (c), 505, 508
- Ko Wu Tshu Than (Simple Discourses on the Investigation of Things), 203 (c), 310, 314
- Kopp, H., 347, 391
- Kopparberg, 203 (e)
- Koran, 426
prohibition of wine in, 127 (c)
- Korea and Koreans, 104, 418
language, 352
- Koṣṭhi-yantra, 55 (e)
- 'Kowtow', 417 (a)
- Krasis* (balance of constituents, leading, if perfect, to enduringness), 235 (e), 236 (b), 394, 404, 460, 461, 472, 477–8, 480–1, 487, 490, 494, 499
See also '*Adl I'tidāl Mizāj*
- Krasnoyarsk, 381
- Krateuas (botanist, fl. c. –100), 325
- Kraus, P., 389, 396, 431; (1), 391; (2, 3), 392, 409, 462, 485, 487, 488
and the Jābirian Corpus Catalogue, 392 (g)
- Kräuterbuch (Lonicerus), 96
- Krünitz, J. G. (+1781), 103
- Ku poison, 453 (d)
- Ku chi (technical term), 5 (c), 47, 79
- Ku Huan (Taoist, d. +485), 215
- Kua. See Trigrams and Hexagrams
- Kuan (sublimatory vessel), 47
- Kuan Lo (San Kuo geomancer and diviner), 252 (b)
- Kuan Tzu (Book of Master Kuan), 233, 372, 359
- Kuang Ya dictionary, 33
- Kuangsi, 120
- Kuangtung
still, 120
sublimation-distillation apparatus in, 47
- Kucha, 438, 440, 441, 443
- Kuei (box, casing, container), 18–20
- Kuh-i-Alādāgh mountains, 422
- Küh-i-Taftān mountain range, 439
- al-Kuhl, 121 (d)
- Kumiss, 142 (c), 148
- Kundika (drinking-pot), 166
- Kung-Kung (legendary Chinese rebel), 343 (c)
- Kung tēng. See 'Rainbow vessel'
- Kungsun Cho (physician, –4th century), 489
- Kuo (cast-iron pan), 167
- Kuo Shih Pu (Emendations to the National History), 142
- Kutub al-Aḥjār 'alā Ra'y Balinās (Books of Minerals according to the Opinions of Balinas [Apollonius]), 461, 472, 486 (c)
- Kutub al-Ajsād al-Sab'a (Books of the Seven Metals), 393
- Kutub al-Mawazin (Books of the Balances), 304 (a), 393, 459, 480 (a)
- Kweilin, 416
- Laboratory, 290, 291
location of, 245
- Laboratory alchemy. See Alchemy
- Laboratory bench. See *Than* (stove platform)
- Laboratory equipment. See Alchemical apparatus
- Labyrinthus Medicorum Errantium* (Paracelsus), 505, 506 (h)

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

INDEX

727

- Lac, 326
 Laccase, 209, 210
 Laccase inhibitor, 209, 315 (i)
 Laccol, 209
 Lacquer
 allergic reactions to, 208
 and crab tissues, 315
 and hemp-seed oil, 315
 industry, 209
 latex, 175, 207–10
 Lactantius (patristic writer, c. +250 to +325), 456
 Ladakhi folklore, 338
 Ladies
 bronze, 163
 silver, 164
 Lagercrantz, O. (2), 350
 Laguna, Andrés (+18th-century Spanish physician), 61
 Laka-wood, 160
Lalita Vistara sūtra, 377 (j)
 Laminar malachite, 287, 288
 ‘Lamp’ of gilt bronze, 55
 Lamp of Learning. See *Maṣābih al-Hikma*
 Lanchow Museum. See Kansu Provincial Museum
Lang-kan elixirs, 216–7, 268
Lang-kan gems, 217
 Language barriers, 333, 415
Lao Hsiēh An Pi Chi (Notes from the Hall of Learned Old Age), 144 (a)
Lao Tzu, 220, 324
Lao Tzu Chung Ching (The Median Canon of Lao Tzu), 288
 Lapidary. See *Kitāb al-Aḥjar*
 Large ounce, 269 (c)
Laṭā’if al-Ma’arif (Pleasant Sorts of Knowledge), 425 (e)
Laṭā’if al-Minan wa’l-Akhlāq (Pleasant Gifts and Traits of Character), 408
 Later Chou (dynasty), 158
 Later Han (period), 162, 202, 331, 400
 pestle and mortar, 163, 164
 rainbow-tēng’, 50, 51
 tomb-model of stove, 31
 Later Thang (dynasty), 158–9
 Latex. See Lacquer latex
 Latin recipe-books, 124, 127
 Laufer, B. (1), 136, 140, 151, 155, 431, 444, 445, 447; (10), 451; (28), 383, 384; (41), 338, 339; (42), 165
 ‘Laughing-mad’ stone, 427 (f), 449
 Lavoisier, Antoine Laurent, 322, 455
 Leaching (in surface-enrichment), 358
 Lead, 40, 177, 189, 228, 230, 232, 254, 255, 258, 259, 293, 295, 298, 313, 314, 320, 358, 387, 469
 alloys of. See Alloys
 amalgamation with mercury, 317
 as the ancestor of all other metals, 362
 aqueous solution of, 170, 173, 174
 black, 257, 258, 356
 oxidised form of, 257
 Realised, 254, 257, 258, 259
 turned into silver, 391
 white, 174, 298, 314, 356
 white frost of, 293
 Lead acetate, 174
 carbonate, 173, 316, 318
 nitrate, 174
 sulphide, 177
 tetroxide, 295
 Leather harness, etc., varnish or cream for protection of, 452
 Leaven, 351, 365, 367
 Lecomte, Louis (Jesuit, +1655 to +1728), 204
 Lectures on the Understanding of the Obscurity of Nature. See *Thung Yu Chüeh*
 Legends. See Fables
 The Legitimate Succession of Perfected Immortals. See *Chen Hsi*
 Lei Hsiao (+5th-century pharmacist), 440
Lei Kung Phao Chih Lun (The Venerable Master Lei’s Treatise on the Decoction and Preparation of Drugs), 315 (k)
Lei Kung Yao Tui (Answers of the Venerable Master Lei concerning Drugs), 241, 440
 Leiden papyri, 318
Leo viridis (the green lion, i.e. ferrous sulphate), 199
 de León, Juan Ponce (conqueror of Florida, +1513), 494 (a)
 Leonardo da Vinci, 90, 92, 178 (a)
 Leprosy, 483
 Leslie, Donald (2, 7), 308
 Lesser Book of the Balance. See *Kitāb al-Mizan al-Saghīr*
 Lesser Book of Pity. See *Kitāb al-Rahma al-Saghīr*
 Lessius, Leonard (medical hygienist, +1554 to +1623), 502
 ‘Letter to Anebo’ (Porphyry), 489 (b)
 ‘Letter of Ostanes to Petasius’, 335
 ‘Letter of Pebechius to Osron’, 335
 ‘Letter of Pseudo-Democritus to Pseudo-Leucip-pus’, 335
Leucōsis. See Whitening
 Levey, M. (1–4), 82
 Levigation process for separating alluvial gold, 339
Lexicon (Suidas, +976), 340
Lexicon Alchemiae (Ruhland), 350 (b)
Lexicon of Chrysopœia, 356
Li (pattern, principle of organisation), 299^c, 361, 371
Li (cooking-pot), 25, 26–8
 Mr Li’s Water Elixir, 271 (d)
Li Chao (historical writer, fl. +810), 142, 152
Li Chhiao-Phing (I, 1), 1, 68, 70, 113, 115
Li Chi (Record of Rites), 306 (c)
Li chih kuei (immediate fixing casing), 19
Li-chih Lou Tui Chiu (verses), 143
Li Fang (encyclopaedic editor, +978), 419
Li Hai Chi (The Beetle and the Sea), 379 (f)
Li Ho (Thang poet, +791 to +817), 143–4

- Li Hsiang-Chieh**, 352
Li Hsien (+ 10th-century alchemist and naturalist), 159, 336, 421
Li Hsiu (Han elixir-maker, —2nd century), 330
Li Hsun (merchant-naturalist of Persian origin, fl. +900 to +930), 159, 421
Li Kao (Thang prince, +752 to +820), 23
Li Kuan (fictional character), 420
Li Mi-I (physician of Persian origin, fl. +735), 421
Li Pa-Pai (Chhin elixir-maker), 330
Li Pai (eminent Thang poet, +701 to +762), 142, 147
Li Shao-Chün (Han alchemist, fl. —133), 133, 329, 330, 333, 354, 456, 496 (b), 498, 505
Li Shih (+ 12th-century naturalist), 208, 315
Li Shih-Chen (eminent pharmaceutical naturalist, +1518 to +1593), 132–3, 135, 137, 138, 139, 140, 144, 152, 156–8, 183, 186, 187, 193, 206, 440, 445–6
Li Shun-Fêng (Thang astronomer, fl. +620 to +680), 310, 314
Li Shun-Hsien (poet and court lady, c. +900), 421
Li Ta-Chih (Chinese Buddhist physician, +14th century), 413
Li Tai San Pao Chi (Buddhist China through the Ages), 413
Li Tê-Yü (Thang statesman, +787 to +849), 242
Li Yuan (Thang palace official), 24
Liang (period), 164, 168, 189
 alchemical apparatus, 12, 162
 alchemists, 177
 ‘frozen-out wine’, 151–4
 reaction vessels, 22
Liang Shih-Chêng (Chhing archaeologist and antiquary, +1697 to +1763), 51
Liang Ssu Kung Chi (Tales of the Four Lords of Liang), 136, 140, 151
Liang Wu Ti (Emperor Wu of the Liang, r. +502 to +549), 218
Liao (dynasty; Chhitian Tartars), 432 (c)
Libations, 263 (b)
Libavius, Andreas (chemist, c. +1540 to +1616), 202
Libellus de Aqua Ardentis (Savonarola), 93
Liber de Arte Distillandi de Compositis (Brunschwyk), 94
Liber de Conservatione Juventutis et Retardatione Senectutis (Villanovan Corpus), 498
Liber Floridus, 93 (i)
Liber Florum Geberti, 77, 87 (c), 94
Liber Fornacum (Geber), 55 (e), 366 (b)
Liber Ignium ad Comburendos Hostes (Marcus Graecus), 123–4, 194
Liber Regius. See *Kitâb al-Malaki*
Liber Sacerdotum (Book of the Priests), 447 (f)
Liber Secretorum Bubacaris (al-Râzî), 403
Liber de Septuaginta Johannis (Jâbirian Corpus), 403, 447 (f)
Liber Servitoris (Abulcasis), 128
Liebig condenser, 98, 111
Lieh Hsien Chuan (Lives of Famous Immortals), 184, 353
Lieh Tzu (Book of Master Lieh), 234, 359, 413–4, 488 (i)
Lieh Yü-Khou (Master Lieh), 359
Lien San-shih-hui Shui Fa (Thirty-six Methods for Transforming Solids and bringing them into Aqueous Solution), 169
Life-cycles. *See* Growth-cycles
Life-length expectations, 507–8
Light-mysticism, 428
Lign-aloes, 496
 wood, 159, 160
‘Like attracts like’, 321, 322, 323, 360
‘Like generates like’, 313
Liliaceous corms, 318
Lime, 178, 289, 290, 294, 295
 as a dehydrator, 315
 salts, 441
Lin-chiang, spirits stills at, 64–5
Lin Shen-Fêng (+ 10th-century alchemical writer), 3
Ling Fang Kuo (Country of Numinous Fragrances), 159
Ling-Pao Chung Chen Tan Chüeh (Supplementary Elixir Instructions of the Company of the Realised Immortals; a Ling-Pao Scripture), 269 (c), 292 (e)
Ling-Pao Taoist tradition, 215
Ling Piao Lu I (Strange Things Noted in the South), 144
Ling Wai Tai Ta (Information on What is Beyond the Passes), 59, 79, 160 (e), 254 (a), 301 (e)
Lins, P. A. & Oddy, W. A. (i), 57
von Lippmann, E. O., 123, 124, 127, 129, 131, 136, 155, 196, 347, 369
‘Liquefied Gold Spiritual Elixir Canon’, 269
Liqueurs, 145, 147
‘Liquor’, ambiguity of the term, 131
List of ‘similar category’ substances, 317, 322
Lists of ‘golds’, 295
Lists of names and cover-names, 356
Literary Collection of the Preservation-and-Return Studio. *See* *Tshun Fu Chai Wén Chi*
Literary Expositor of Chemical Physic. *See* *Shih Yao Erh Ya*
Litharge, 258, 320
Liturgical and Apotropaic Encyclopaedia of Taoism. *See* *Tao Fa Hui Yuan*
Liturgical dance. *See* Ritual dance
Liturgeries, accompanying alchemical operations, 10 (a), 211 (a), 246 (h), 289, 290
Liu An (Prince of Huai-Nan, —2nd century), 168, 169, 178, 202, 224, 226, 231, 310, 312, 330, 333, 471
Liu Chhao (period), 78–9
Liu Chih-Ku (Prefect of Chhang-ming, c. +740), 249
Liu Hsiang (scholar and alchemist, c. —60), 133, 330, 333

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

INDEX

729

- Liu Hsüan-Chen (Taoist pharmacist, +8th century), 183
 Liu Hsün (+9th-century writer and traveller), 144
Liu-huang shui (aqueous solution of sulphur), 170
Liu i ni. *See* Lute
 Liu Jung (Han elixir-maker, —2nd century), 330
 Liu Kuan (Han alchemist, +121 to +186), 331
 Liu Shêng (Prince Ching of Chung-shan, d. —113)
 tomb of, 21, 54, 55
 Liu Tao-Ho (Thang alchemist, fl. +760), 380
 Liu Thai-Pin (Chhin elixir-maker), 330
 Liu Tsung-Yuan (scholar, +773 to +819), 159
 Lives of Famous Immortals. *See* *Lieh Hsien Chuan*
 Lizards, 385, 496
 Lo-fou, Mt., 220
 Lo Shu diagram, 291 (c), 462, 464, 465, 468, 469
 Lobinol, 209
 Location
 alchemical specifications of, 286–7
 and the Five Elements, 286
 Lodestone, 311, 312, 315
 Logos, 505
 Lokapalas, 489
 Longevity. *See* Material immortality and longevity
 Longevity, areas of, 507
 patriarchal (biblical), 493 (e)
 Lonicerus, Adam (botanist and chemist, +1528 to +1586), 87, 93, 94, 96, 98
 Lop Nor, 388
Lopas (crucible), 58, 80, 81, 84
 Lorgna, A. M. (+1786), 154
 Lotus, 315
Lou tou. *See* Catch-bowl of the Chinese still
 'Love' and 'hate' in natural phenomena, 312 (e), 322
Lu (stove, furnace), 11, 12, 16, 17, 18, 57
Lu and *Li* (fictional characters), 420
Lü fan ('green alum', i.e. crystalline ferrous sulphate), 199
Lu hsien (ground salt), 181
Lu Hsing Ching (Tractate on the Fontanelles of the Skull), 445 (g)
Lu Hsiu-Ching (+5th-century Taoist liturgical writer), 215
Lu Huo Pén Tshao (Spagyrical Natural History), 189
Lü Kuang (general, conqueror of Kucha, d. +399), 151
Lu sha (sal ammoniac), 439, 445, 446, 447
Lü Shih Chhun Chhiu (Master Lü's Spring and Autumn Annals), 253 (c), 315 (k), 465
Lu Thien-Chi (scholar and official, fl. +1114), 309, 317
(Lu) Tsan-Ning. *See* Tsan-Ning
Luka bar Serapion (translator, +9th century), 448–9
 Lull, Raymond (alchemical writer and logician, c. +1232 to +1316), 122
Lullian Corpus (late +14th century), 455
 Lumholtz, C. S. (1), 108, 109
Lun Hêng (Discourses Weighed in the Balance), 133, 252 (b), 293 (g), 331 (d), 366
Lun Yü (Conversations and Discourses of Confucius), 242 (c)
 Lunar mansions and their constellations, 313, 341 (c), 360, 381, 427 (f)
 Lunation cycle, 267
Lung (basket, perhaps technical term for catch-bowl), 146
Lung Chhuan Lieh Chih (Classified Records from Dragon River), 203
Lung-hsi. *See* Kansu
Lung Hu Huan Tan Chüeh (Explanation of the Dragon-and-Tiger Cyclically Transformed Elixir), 3, 242, 249, 264 (a)
Lung hu tan thai (Dragon-and-Tiger platform), 11
Lûqâ ibn Sarâfyûn. *See* Luka bar Serapion
Lute (*liu i ni*, sealing mixture for apparatus), 58, 79, 163, 176 (b), 219, 260, 261
Lye, 180
Lyngurion. *See* Tourmaline
Lynx, 363
 Ma Chih (pharmaceutical naturalist, +10th century), 184, 186, 187
Ma ju (mare's milk), 139 (f)
Ma ju phu-thao (horse-nipple grapes), 139
 Ma Ming-Shêng (Han alchemist, fl. c. +100), 331, 353, 400
 Macrobiotic theme, transmission of, outwards from China, 491 (b)
 Macrobiotics
 first use of the term, 502
 See also Material immortality and longevity
 Madagascans, 111
 Maenchen-Helfen, O., 104
Mafâtîh al-'Ulûm (Key to the Sciences, encyclopaedia), 424 (j)
 Magadha (modern Patna), 197
Maghnisiyâ (ore of manganese), 469
 Maghrib, 405
 Magi, Magian, 324 (b), 334, 426 (c), 484 (h)
Magia Adamica (Vaughan), 505
 Magic and magicians, 124, 220, 246–7, 281, 311, 312, 313, 325, 334, 346, 358, 369, 387, 392, 414, 419, 471
 apotropaic, 334
 natural, 305
 papyri, 312 (c)
 science and, 240, 314
 sympathetic, 322, 325
 Magic mushroom, 217, 449
 Magic squares, 427 (f), 462–9, 471
 as cosmic symbols, 462, 468
 Magical papyri, 378
 Magnesium, salts of, 183, 194, 313
 Magnesium carbonates, 181
 Magnesium sulphate, 181–2, 190, 193
 crystalline, 181
 Magnetic attraction, 314, 315
 Magnetic compass, 19 (a), 131, 485

- Magnetic iron oxide, 173
 Magnetic phenomena, 495, 502, 503 (e)
 Magnetite, 225, 226, 287, 288, 313, 320, 364
 aqueous solution of, 170, 173
 Magnetite-realgar recipe, 177
 Maguey juice, 107, 108
 Magus, Renaissance, 313 (e), 314 (b)
Mahābhārata, 131, 339
 al-Mahdī (the Imām to come), 396
 al-Mahdī ('Abbāsid Caliph, r. +775 to +785),
 410 (a)
 Mahdihassan, S., 379; (9), 352–3, 474; (14),
 352–3; (56), 97
 Mahler, J. G. (1), 418
Mahua flowers, 106
 Maimonides (Moshe ben Maimōn, Hispano-Jewish philosopher, +1135 to +1204),
 478 (b)
 Main Principles of the Five Elements. See *Wu Hsing Ta I*
 Maitreya, 396 (i)
 al-Majrītī, Maslama Ibn Aḥmad (d. c. +1007),
 304 (a), 305 (a), 401, 402, 405, 486
 al-Majūsī. See 'Ali ibn al 'Abbas . . .
 Malachite, 225, 226, 232, 262, 270, 287, 288
 Malaria, 191
 al-Malaṭī. See Abū al-Faraj al-Malaṭī
 Malaya, 333
 Male and Female forces, 253, 318, 363–4, 373,
 450, 456, 469, 470
 in the Sābiān religion, 428
 See also Yin and Yang
 'Male', applied to one of the sulphides of arsenic,
 356
 Malt, 317
 Malwa, 106
 Ma'mal al-katākit, 434
 al-Ma'mūn (seventh 'Abbāsid Caliph, r. +813
 to +833), 370, 411
 Man-chhēng
 tomb of Liu Shēng at, 21
Manāzil, 427 (b)
 Mandaeans, 426 (c)
 Mandeville, Sir John (*soi-disant* traveller, c.
 +1300 to +1372), 338
 Mandrake, 490
Mang hsiao ('prickle-solve'), 181–4, 185, 186, 189,
 190, 193
 Manganese, 209
 Mani (founder of a Gnostic religion, +216 to
 +277), 377 (a), 378 (a), 379 (d)
 Manichaeism, 370, 378, 385–6, 387
 Manipulations based on Sympathies and Antipathies. See *Cheirokmeta*
 al-Mansūr (second 'Abbāsid Caliph, r. +754 to
 +775), 391, 411, 416
 Manual of Discipline (Qumran), 461 (f)
 Manual of the Five Talismans . . . See (*Tung Hsüan*) *Ling Pao Fu Ching*
 Manual of the Five Viscera. See *Wu Tsang Ching*
 Manual of the Great Mystery. See *Thai Hsüan Ching*
- Manual of the Numinous Chhi of Potable Gold;
 a Thai-Chhing Scripture. See *Thai-Chhing Chin I Shen Chhi Ching*
 Manual of Potable Gold. See *Chin I Ching*
 Manual of the Potable Gold (or Metallous Fluid)
 and the Magical Elixir (or Enchymoma); a
 Thai-Chhing Scripture. See *Thai-Chhing Chin I Shen Tan Ching*
 Manual of the Thirty-Six [Methods for] the
 Bringing of Solids into Aqueous Solution.
 See *San-shih-liu Shui Ching*
 Manual operations, 314, 397
 Manual workers. See Artisans
 'Manuals of the Immortals', 190, 206
 Manufacturing processes, 304
 Manure beds, 188
 Mao, Mt., 214
 Mao Chung (Taoist mage, perhaps —1st century),
 213, 330
 Mao Ku (Taoist mage, perhaps —1st century),
 213, 218, 330
 Mao Shan school of Taoism, 213, 214, 216, 220,
 287, 331
 Mao Shan writings, 215, 268, 269, 279, 289
 Mao Ying (Taoist mage, perhaps —1st century),
 213, 214, 218, 330, 357
Mappae Clavicula (Little Key to Painting), 44,
 123–4, 127, 328
 Marāghah observatory, 411, 425
 Marathi dictionary (Molesworth), 131
 Marcasite, 199, 200
 Marcus Graecus (+13th-century military writer),
 123, 124, 194
 Mare's milk, 64, 103, 104, 105, 108, 148
 de Maricourt, Pierre (+13th-century physicist),
 495
 Mars (planet), 226, 228, 428
 Marshall, Sir John (1), 85–6, 87
Martaba (Jābirian degrees), 460
 van Marum, Martinus (physicist, +1750 to 1837),
 114 (b)
 Marvels of Creation. See *Kitāb al'Aja' ib al-Makhlūqāt* . . .
 Mary the Jewess (Alexandrian proto-chemist),
 32 (b), 84, 88, 105, 129, 178, 311, 318, 327,
 344, 364, 387, 412, 484
Maṣābiḥ al-Hikma (Lamp of Learning), 482
Masalik al-Absar fi Mamālik al-Amsār (Ways of
 the Eyes to Survey the Provinces of the
 Great States), 417 (g)
 Māsarjawayh (Jewish physician and translator,
 +684), 411, 476
 Masculine and Feminine forces. See Male and
 Female forces
 Māsiš (Persian princess, d. at Sian, +874), 418 (a)
 Mason, G. H. (1800), 67
 Mass, liturgical, etymology of, 366 (a)
Massa, 366, 401 (a), 405 (a)
 Massicot, 258
 Master Lü's Spring and Autumn Annals. See
 Lü Shih Chhun Chhiu
Mastarion ('cold-still'), 126, 127 (b)

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

INDEX

731

- al-Mas'udī, Ibn 'Alī (geographer, +895 to c. +957), 425, 437
Materia medica, 452
Materia Medica classified according to the Four Tones . . . See *Ssu Shéng Pén Tshao*
Materia prima. See *Prima materia*
 Material immortality and longevity, 185, 188, 197, 209, 237, 238, 240 (b), 241, 243–4, 323, 324, 328, 329, 355, 388, 420–1, 475, 477, 478, 480, 482, 490, 503, 508
 Arabs and, 391, 393, 404, 498
 Byzantines and, 500–1
 chemically induced, 490, 491, 497–8
 drug of. See Elixirs of immortality and longevity
 extreme longevity, 478, 480, 495, 507
krasis and, 472, 477–8, 480–1
rūh and, 470
 techniques for, 329
 in the West. See Europe
See also Life-length expectations
 Materials. See Substances and Chemical substances
 Mathematics and mathematicians, 278, 298, 305, 392, 424, 425, 463, 503
 and modern chemistry, 276
 Matter
 ‘ascent’ of, in aurification, 385
 in Gnostic thought essentially evil, 385, 387
 Jābirian theory of, 394
 Matter and form, 229 (d), 361
 Matter and organisation (*chhi* and *li*), 361
 Matter and spirit, distinction between, 361
 Mattioli, Petrus Andreas (physician and chemist, +1501 to +1577), 91–2
 Maturing of inorganic medicines, 297
 Mauritania, 325
 al-Mawṣili. See al-Ḥasan ibn al-Nakad . . .
 Mayers, W. F. (1), 307
 Mayow, John (chemist and physician, +1641 to +1679), 179
Maza (leavened bread, ferment), 351, 365, 366
‘The *Maza* of Moses’, 345 (b), 365
 Mazdaeans, 334, 426 (c)
 Mead (honey wine), 111, 139, 142 (c)
 Meadows of Gold and Fields of Gems. See *Murūj al-Dhahab*. . .
 Measurement, 275, 277, 279, 301
 Mechanicism, 502
 Media (Iranian region), 333, 335
 Median Canon of Lao Tzu. See *Lao Tzu Chung Ching*
 Medical character of Arabic alchemy, 475 (a)
 Medicinal Methods of the Aqueous [Solutions] Manual of Hsien-Yuan the Yellow Emperor. See *Hsien-Yuan Huang-Ti Shui Ching Yao Fa*
 Medicine, 183, 190, 211, 215, 220, 223, 240, 260, 262, 263, 287, 298, 311, 325, 336, 392, 421, 442, 450, 452, 473, 481, 492, 503, 507
 alchemy and, 220–1, 393
 Arabic. See Arabic medicine and chemistry, 491
 Greek. See Greek medicine
 role of the elixir in, 483, 490
 Sumerian. See Sumerian medicine
 Medicines. See Drugs
 Meditation and its techniques, 212, 216–17, 233, (f), 244, 245, 246, 288
 Mediterranean region, 332, 339, 358
 chemical apparatus, 76–7
 contacts with China, 354
 Persian influences in, 334
 stills, 98, 105
 transmissions from, 409
 water-bath, 32
Medulla Destillatoria et Medica (Khunrath), 153 (b)
Mei-Chhi Shih Chu (Wang Mei-Chhi's Commentaries on Poetry), 161
 Mei Piao (alchemical lexicographer, +806), 2, 357
 Melanin, 209
Melanōsis. See Blackening
Melhē armōniqōn (ammoniac salt, or soda), 436
 de Mély, F., 206, 362
 Memnon statues, 488 (h)
‘Memoirs of Democritus’ (Petasius), 335
 Memoirs of my Official Journey (in the Western Regions). See *Hsing Chhēng chi*
 Mencius (Meng Kho, ---4th-century Confucian philosopher), 246
Mēng Chhi Pi Than (Dream Pool Essays), 201, 271 (d)
 Mēng Hsü (Sung alchemist, +1225), 3, 39, 40, 44, 74, 275, 276, 277, 292, 322
Mēng Liang Lu (Dreaming of the Capital while the Rice is Cooking), 147 (f)
 Mēng Nai-Chhang (I), 177
 Mēng Shen (Thang proto-chemical naturalist), 136, 137, 141
 Mēng Yao-Fu (Sung alchemical compiler), 3, 258, 259
 Menstrual blood, 367
Menstruum universale, 181 (e)
 Mental hygiene, first use of phrase, 502 (d)
 Mental Mirror Reflecting the Essentials of Oral Instruction about the Discourses on the Elixir and the Enchymoma. See *Tan Lun Chiieh Chih Hsin Ching*
Mentha arvensis, 66, 159 (d)
 Merchants, 107, 149, 203, 354, 388, 417–21, 423, 469
 drug-, 452
hu (Persian), 418, 419
 Italian, 485
 Mercuric acetate, 175, 318
 Mercuric oxide, 261, 263, 353
 Mercuric sulphate
 formation of, by treatment with alum, 318
 Mercuric sulphide, 45, 177, 240, 262, 302, 380, 458
 formation of, by treatment with alum, 318
 solubilisation of, 174, 175
 Mercurous chloride, 353

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

732

INDEX

- Mercury, 40, 74, 135, 173, 174, 177, 185, 224, 228, 229, 230, 232, 234, 254, 255, 257, 258, 259, 260, 261, 262, 298, 301, 315, 317, 356, 375, 434, 454, 455, 482
 amalgamation with gold, 317, 380
 'and its analogues', 313
 antiquity of knowledge and applications of, in China, 56
 chlorides of, 47, 318, 440
 combined with sulphur to form vermillion, 9
 consumption of, 185
 conversion into silver, 169, 450
 distillation of. *See* Distillation
 'Eastern' and 'Western', 470 (e), 471 (e), 478, 482
 fable, concerning, 337
 'fermenting' with sulphur, 373
 fixation of, 350
 graduation of Yang-ness in, 320
 liquefying of, 9
 metallic, 44
 metamorphosis of, 255
 mines, 49, 337, 422 (b)
 occupational disease and, 80
 omitted in Arabic lists, 429, 431
 oxidation of, 21
 poisoning, 227
 purification of, 53, 54, 55, 58, 79–80
 Realised, 254, 257, 258, 259, 263
 Śābian symbolic correlation system and, 427–8
 salts of, 435
 stills. *See* Stills
 sublimation of, 45, 80, 258
 sulphide of, 172
 yields of, from different types of cinnabar, 301, 303, 304
 Mercury-cinnabar cycle, 261–2, 263
 Mercury-lead process, 255
 Mercury-sulphur theory, 373, 392, 395, 454–9, 469
 Chinese alchemy and, 457–9
 Mercury and sulphur, 498, 499
 combination and liberation of, 402
 'foodstuff' from, 483
 and the formation of *khārṣīni*, 431
 maleness and femaleness of, 318, 320, 455–6
 Mercury (planet), 228
 correlated with *khārṣīni*, 428, 431
 Merv, 333, 370, 422
 Meshed, 422
 Mesopotamia, 334, 336, 373, 409
 extraction apparatus, 98
 rim-pot stills, 81, 82, 94, 116–117
 serpent symbolism in, 375
Messing (brass), 366 (e)
 Metabolism, 456 (g)
 Metacinnabarite, 262
 Metal chlorides, poisonous effects of, 442
 Metal oxides, 434
 Metal-working, and metal-workers, 246–7, 304, 328, 342, 441
 The Metallous Enchymoma Within. *See* *Nei Chin Tan*
 Metallurgical fluxes, 181, 186, 191, 194
 Metallurgy, and metallurgists, 1, 33, 211, 243, 301, 318, 335, 348, 349, 402
 Metals, 395
 colouring of, 175, 434
 connected with planets, 373, 427–8
 counterfeiting of, 332
 'fevers' of, 478
 'filtration' of, 430
 'fixation' or 'killing' of, 198
 growth of, in the earth, 223, 233, 243, 247, 248, 362, 373, 395
 idea that all metals are a mixture of sulphur and mercury, 373, 392, 395, 454–9, 469
 male, female or hermaphrodite, 373
 oxidation and reduction of, 374
 precious. *See* Precious metals
 Realised, 254, 255
 transmutation of, 202, 203
 Metamorphoses, 234–5, 247, 253, 259, 262
 biological, 405
 chain —, 242
 of cinnabar, 255
 of mercury, 255
 into immortals, 303
 Metaphysics, 290, 299, 305
Meteorologica (Aristotle), 60, 457
 Method for Making the Eight-Radiances Four-Stamens Purple-Fluid (Five-Pearl) Incarnate Numinous Elixir. *See* *Thai-Shang Pa-Ching Ssu-Jui Tzu-Chiang (Wu-Chu) Chiang-Shēng Shen Tan Fang*
 Methods of the Guardian of the Mysteries for the Marvellous Thaumaturgical Transmutation of Ninefold Cyclically Transformed Cinnabar. *See* *Thai-Shang Wei Ling Shen Hua Chu Chuan Huan Tan Sha Fa*
 Methods of the Holy Immortals for Ingesting Cinnabar . . . *See* *Shen Hsien Fu Erh Tan Shih Hsing Yao Fa*
 Methods used by the Holy Immortals to Prepare the Elixir, Project it, and Cast the Precious Mirrors of the Three Powers. *See* *Shen Hsien Lien Tan Tien Chu San Yuan Pao Ching Fa*
 Methods of the Various Schools for Magical Elixir Preparations. *See* *Chu Chia Shen Phin Tan Fa*
 Methuselah, 493
 Methyl alcohol, 178
 Metrology, 204 (f)
 Metzger, Helen, 321
 Mexico, stills in, 106, 107, 108, 109, 110, 115
Mezcal (spirits), 108
 Mica, 168, 210, 288
 aqueous suspension of, 171, 207
 Michael the Syrian (historian, +9th century), 476 (f)
 Micro-Soxhlet apparatus. *See* Soxhlet . . .
 Micro-still. *See* Stills

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

INDEX

733

- Microcosm-macrocosm analogy, 232, 247–8, 264, 279, 281–6, 287, 288, 290, 292, 308, 427 (f), 464, 502
- Microcosmic circulation, 380
- Middle Ages (Western), 313, 314, 367, 368, 398, 409, 491, 508
- Middle Chou (period), 381
- Miftah al-'Ulüm* (Key to the Sciences, encyclopaedia), 424 (k)
- Milk
- action of rennet on, 367
 - as antidote for mercury poisoning, 80 (d)
- Millenniarism, 396
- Millet, 64, 145, 150
- Mills
- edge-runner, 162
- Mimir, 427 (c)
- 'Mr Miner's Pick', 184
- Mineral acids, 195, 199
- earliest passages on, 197–8
- Mineral deposits
- associated with deeper strata of metals or metallic ores, 233
- Mineral growth, in the earth, 211, 223–4, 231, 262, 362
- rate of, controllable by man, 243, 246, 362
- Mineral maturation curve, 302
- Mineralogy, 224, 241
- Minerals, 395, 492
- aqueous solutions of, 168, 169
 - changed and transformed artificially, 404
 - classification of, 395
 - connected with planets, 373
 - dynamic relations between, 230
 - 'fixing' of, 250
 - growth of, in the earth. *See* Mineral growth
 - insoluble, 205
 - seminal essences of, 227
 - with strange properties, 390
- Ming (period), 132–40, 310, 417
- retort, 81
 - distillation of alcohol, 132–40
- Ming I Pieh Lu* (Informal Records of Famous Physicians), 183, 185, 187, 188 (c), 440, 441
- Ming Thang (cosmic temple), 291 (c), 462, 464
- Mining and mines, 224, 412
- at Almadén, 337
 - of cinnabar, 241
 - fallow period for, 363
 - and the 'gold-digging ants', 338–9
 - rituals connected with, 246
 - signs of ore beds, 314
- Minium, 294, 295, 298
- Minusinsk basin, 381
- Mirabilite, 181
- Miraculum Mundi Continuatio* (Glauber), 153 (c)
- Mirâd* (a kind of stone), 450
- Mirror of the Alchemical Elaboratory. *See* *Tan Fang Ching Yuan*
- Mirror of the Art of the Yellow and the White. *See* *Huang Pai Ching*
- Mirrors
- amalgamation silvering on, 57
 - distorting, 430 (g)
 - made of *khârṣîni*, 430, 431
 - polishing-cream for, 452
 - reflection in, 314
- Miscellanea of the Thang Dynasty. *See* *Thang Yü Lin*
- Miscellaneous Jottings far from Home. *See* *Thou Huang Tsa Lu*
- Miscellaneous Records of the Bamboo-Leaf Pavilion. *See* *Chu Yeh Thing Tsa Chi*
- Miscellaneous Records of the Cloudy Immortals. *See* *Yün Hsien Tsa Chi*
- Miscellaneous Records collected in the Thai-Phing reign-period. *See* *Thai-Phing Kuang Chi*
- Miscellany of the Yu-yang Mountain Cave. *See* *Yu-Yang Tsa Tsu*
- al-Miṣrī, Abū al-Fayd, Thawbān ibn Ibrāhim, al-Ikhmīmī (Egyptian alchemist, d. +859), 397, 401
- Mistranslations, 133–4
- Mithraism, 377 (c), 476
- Mitra, Rajendralala (1), 131, 132
- Miu Chi (Taoist theologian, fl. —124), 465
- Mixture, nature of, 201
- Mizāj* (constitution, or mixture), 394, 404. *See also* *Krasis*
- Mizān al-hurūf* (balance of the letters), 461
- Mizraim (son of Cham), 346
- Mizuno Seiichi (3), 29
- Mnemonic verse, 261
- Mo-Ni Kuang Fo Chiao Fa I Lüeh* (Compendium of the Doctrines and Styles of the Teaching of Mani, the Buddha of Light), 343 (c)
- Mo Tsu Tan Fa* (Alchemical Preparations of Master Mo), 329 (e)
- Modern Order (of enumeration of the Five Elements), 229 (a)
- Mogul India, 106
- Moicheia* (adultery, falsification, counterfeiting, deception), 350
- Molecular stills. *See* Still
- Molecules, 321
- Molesworth, J. T. (1), 131
- di Moncalieri, Albini (court physician, +14th century), 94
- Money. *See* Coins, Paper money
- Mongol folklore, 338
- Mongol peoples, 148, 220, 417
- distillation among, 103, 104, 105
- Mongolia, 44
- 'Mongolian' water-basin still-head cooler, 48
- Monks, 500–1
- Buddhist, 147
- Monopolies. *See* Government monopolies
- Monotheism
- Islamic, 400, 478
- Monsters, artificial production of, 486 (k)
- Montell, G. (2), 103
- Moon, 230
- prognostication by, 342

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

734

INDEX

- Moon (*cont.*)
worship of, 427
'Moor's Head' (cooling device in stills), 81, 90,
91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 97–8, 114, 115, 120, 132
origin of the term, 129–31
- Moral Discourses illustrating Mr. Han's Recension of the 'Book of Odes'. *See Han Shih Wai Chuan*
- Mordants, 180
- Moreacol, 209
- Mori Tateyuki (1845), 316
- Morienus (supposed Byzantine hermit), 390, 484
- Moroccan stills. *See* Stills
- Morrison, P. & Morrison, E. (1), 102
- Mortar (builder's), 20
- Mortar. *See* Pestle and mortar
- Mortification (alchemical process), 9
- Morton, A. A. (1), 101, 102
- de Morveau Guyton L. B. (chemist, +1737 to 1816), 322
- Moses, 345, 365
- Most Ancient Canon of the Joy of the Earth.
See *Thai Ku Thu Tui Ching*
- Moulds
prevention of, 315
in wine-making, 138–9, 317
- Mountain environment, and longevity, 507
- Movement
in space, 322
superior to rest, 470
- Mu (High King of the Chou), 413, 414, 488
- Mu ching* shrub, 205
- Mu Thien Tzu Chuan* (Account of the Travels of the Emperor Mu), 414
- al-Mu'allim al-thālith (the 'Third Master'). *See* Ibn Sīnā . . .
- Mudbir* ('regeneration' or return), 453
- Muhammad the Prophet, 411, 416, 482
- Muhammad ibn Ismā'il (the imām to come, the Mahdi, descended from Isma'il ibn Ja'far), 396
- al-Muhaqqiq (the Investigator). *See* al-Tūsī, Naṣīr al-Dīn
- Mukhtaṣar al-'Ajā'ib* (Breviary of Marvels), 488 (h)
- Mulberry ashes, 320
- Mulled wine. *See* Wine
- Multhauf, R. P., 54, 373; (8), 434
- Multi-focal origin of proto-chemistry, 388 (a), 504
- Mumia*, 207 (b)
- Mummification, 180
- Mung bean. *See* Red mung bean
- Mugaddima* (Prolegomena to History), 389, 404, 435 (h), 471, 480, 486 (f)
- Muruj al-Dhahab wa-Ma'ādin al-Jawāhir* (Meadows of Gold and Fields of Gems), 425, 437 (c)
- Mūsā al-Kāzīm (d. +799, seventh imām). *See* Isma'il ibn Ja'far
- Mūsā ibn Nuṣair (adviser to the Governor of Basra, c. +690), 475
- Musaeum Hermeticum* (+1678), 368
- Musawwirūn* (image-makers), 488
- Muscle, 384
- Muscovite mica, 288
- Musée Guimet (Paris), 383
- Museum of Far Eastern Antiquities (Stockholm), 383
- Muṣḥaf al-Hayāt* (Book of Life), 412
- Muṣḥaf al-Jamā'a* (Book of the Assembly), 398 (l), 399 (a)
- Mushroom. *See* Magic mushroom
- Music of the spheres, 462
- Musical instruments, tuning of, 24
- Muslims. *See* Islam
- Must, fermentation of, 110, 111
- Mutational diagrams, 268
- Mutton fat, 320
- Mutual Conquest Order (of enumeration of the Five Elements), 312 (e), 360
- Mutual Production Order (of enumeration of the Five Elements), 225, 229, 230, 252, 255, 312 (e), 360
- Myrrh, 82, 369 (c)
- Myrobalan, 299
- Mysterious Antidotarium. *See* *Hsiān Chieh Lu*
- Mysterious Sagehood-Enhancing Canon of the Great Ninefold Cyclically Transformed Cinnabar Elixir. *See* *Chiu Chuan Ling Sha Ta Tan Tzu Shēng Hsiān Ching*
- Mysterious Teachings on the Alchemical Preparation of Numinous Cinnabar, Supplementary to the Perfected Treasure Manual, a Ta-Tung Scripture. *See* *Ta-Tung Lien Chen Pao Ching Hsiu Fu Ling Sha Miao Chieh*
- Mysterious Teachings on the Ninefold Cyclically Transformed Gold Elixir. *See* *Ta-Tung Lien Chen Pao Ching, Chiu Huan Chin Tan Miao Chieh*
- Mystical naturalism and social revolution, 397
- Mysticism
and the Graeco-Egyptian and Persian proto-chemists, 386
light-, 428
- Mythology, 225
- Babylonian, 296
- Na-Lo-Mi-So-Po (Indian alchemist, c. +648), 197
- Nabataeans, 409
- al-Nabaṭī. *See* Ibn al-Wahshīya . . .
- al-Nadīm. *See* Ibn abī Ya'qūb al-Nadīm . . .
- Nafs* ('soul'), 470
- Nag Hammadi (Coptic Gnostic Library), 386 (e)
- Najib al-Dīn, Muḥammad ibn 'Alī al-Samarqandī (physician, d. +1223), 424 (b)
- Nakajima Satoshi (I), 203
- Nakshatra*, 427 (f)
- Nan-Tho (monk from Balkh, fl. +720), 420 (a)
- Nanking Museum. *See* Chiangsu Provincial Museum
- Nanking University. Institute of Cultural Studies, 49
- Museum, 50

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

INDEX

735

- Nao sha* (sal ammoniac), 439, 440, 443, 444 ff.
Naptha, 206
 distillation of, 128
Nara (period), 421
Nara, Shōsōin Treasury at
 Thang specimen of *mang hsiao* in, 181–2
Nārāyaṇavāmīn, 197 (f)
Nargileh, 165
Naṣir al-Din. See al-Tūsi . . .
Nasr, Said Husain, 487
Natron, 180, 433
Natural History of the Southern Countries beyond the Seas. See *Hai Yao Pēn Tshao*
Natural History of Yeasts and Fermentations. See *Chhü Pēn Tshao*
Natural philosophy, 245, 306 310, 369
Nature
 as an organism, 223
 conforming to, 246
 man's dominion over, 314
 philosophy of, 298
 uniformity of, 400
Nature-healing, 502
Naturphilosophie, 503 (e)
Navigations. See *Voyages*
Nechepso-Petrosiris, 360 (g)
Needham, Walter (+17th-century anatomist and embryologist), 368
Nei Chin Tan (The Metallous Enchymoma Within), 257 (c)
Nei tan. See Alchemy, physiological
Nei yeh, chapter of the *Kuan Tzu* book, *q.v.*
Nemesius of Emesa (physician and physiologist, fl. c. +400), 370
Neo-Confucians, 299, 300, 361
Neo-Ismā‘ilites, 397
Neo-Platonic philosophers, 227, 489, 502
 of Islam, 397
Neogi, P., 198
Neolithic pottery vessels, 25, 26, 27, 97
Neoplatonism. See Neo-Platonic philosophers
Nepal valley, 106
Nestorian Stone (+781), 505
Nestorians, 370, 410, 447, 485
Nestorius (patriarch of Byzantium, fl. +431, but set aside as heretical), 410
New Experiments and Observations touching Cold (Boyle), 153 (f)
‘New Jersey lightning’, 151 (c)
New Spain, 109
Newara. See Tribal peoples
Newly Reorganised Pharmacopoeia. See *Hsin Hsiu Pēn Tshao*
Newton, Isaac, 321, 455 (g), 502
Niang (fermented), 133
Nickel, 33, 358
Nien-Chhang (monk and historical writer, +1341), 413
Nigredo. See Blackening
Nihāyat al-Talab (End of the Search), 404, 482
Nihon no Sangyō Gijutsu (Industrial Arts and Technology in Old Japan), 193
Nihon Sankai Meibutsu Zue (Illustrations of Processes and Manufactures), 46, 200
Nile Valley, 333
Nimbus effects
 of sweet wine heated with ‘sea-foam’ and sulphur, 124
Nine (number), importance of, in Chinese thought, 464
Nine cauldrons of the Hsia, 464
Nine Continents, 464
‘Nine-cycle Gold Elixir’, 270
‘Nine-Cycle Potable Gold Great Cyclically Transformed Elixir’, 285
Nine Directions of space, 468
Nine Palaces, 291, 462, 464
Nine Provinces of China, 464
Nine Spaces of the heavens, 464
The Ninefold Cyclically Transformed Caerulean Golden Numinous Cinnabar Elixir. See *Chiu Chuan Chhing Chin Ling Sha Tan*
Ninefold Cyclically Transformed Numinous Elixir, 218–19, 291
Ninefold Realised Median Canon of the Imperial Lord . . . See *Shang-Chhing Thai-Shang Ti Chün Chiu Chen Chung Ching*
Ning Hsien Wang. See Chu Chhüan
Ning-shui-shih shui (aqueous suspension of gypsum or calcareous spar), 171
Nishapur, 409, 422
al-Nisibī. See Abu Qirān . . .
Nisibis, 410
Nitrates, 172, 173, 174, 175, 177, 188, 193, 196, 197, 204, 205, 322
 ions, 179
Nitre, 168, 172, 175, 190
 various meanings of the word, 179–80
Nitre beds, 188
Nitric acid, 21, 167, 172, 173, 175, 176, 177, 178, 181, 185, 186, 195, 199, 384
 making of, 196, 197
Nitric oxide, 174
Nitrogen, 100, 295
Nitrous anhydride, 175
Noah, 346
Nodular concretions, 364
‘Nolunty’, 503
Nomenclature. See Technical terms
‘Nomenclature of the Egg, the Mystery of the Art’, 367
‘Nonsense’, 503 (n)
Noria, 386, 386 (e)
Northern Mountain Wine Manual. See *Pei Shan Chiu Ching*
Northern Sung (dynasty), 44, 169, 389, 417
Northern Wei (period), 147
Norton, Samuel (alchemical writer, +1548 to +1604). *See* *Catholicon Physicorum*
Norton, Thomas (alchemical writer, fl. c. +1440 to +1478), 499
Norwich, Sir Thomas Browne’s laboratory at, 368
Notes from the Hall of Learned Old Age. See *Lao Hsüeh An Pi Chi*

- Nshādr, nūshādr* (ammonium chloride), 436
 Nuclear reactions, 384
Nukhbat al-Dahr. See *Kitāb Nukhbat al-Dahr*
 Number
 any number expressed with no more than nine digits, 463
 application to terrestrial measure, 305
 as a reflection of underlying reality, 304
 cosmogenic procession of, 470
 gravimetric application of, 300–1
 mathematical and numerological functions of, 304
 Numerals
 Arabic, 463
 ‘emblematic’, 276–7
 Numerological computations, 394–5, 459–60
 Numerological succession, 461, 462, 465
 Numerology, 211, 264, 266, 275, 276, 278, 279, 281, 289, 299, 305, 409, 503
 and the five-phasing system, 277
 and gravimetry, 303
Nung Hsiēh Tsuan Yao (Essentials of Agricultural Technology), 66
Nūshādir (or nūshādur, sal ammoniac), 395, 432, 433, 435–6, 441, 443, 447
 Nutrition, 311
 Nutritional Natural History. See *Shih Wu Pēn Tshao*
 Nutritional Therapy and Natural History. See *Shih Liao Pēn Tshao*
 Nyasaland, 111
 Obscuration Cycle (*pu*), 222
 Occupational diseases, 80
 Occupations for Retired Scholars. See *Shen Yin Ochema*, 470 (k)
 Odd and even numbers, 465 (a)
 Odoric of Pordenone (Franciscan traveller, +13th century), 485
 ‘Oecumenical philosophers’, 344
Oedipus Aegyptiacus (Kircher), 503 (n)
 Ogata Kōan, 502
 Ogdoads, 502 (f)
 ‘Oil of bricks’, 196 (d), 198, 200 (a), 237–8
 ‘Oil of sulphur’, 195 (b)
 ‘Oil of vitriol’, 195 (b)
 Oils, 121, 395
 essential. See Essential oils
 mineral, 162
 olive, 128 (a)
 peppermint, 66
 separating from an aqueous solution, 385
 vegetable, 162
 Ointments, 348
Oktateuchos, 334
 Old Silk Road, 332, 352, 354, 360, 370, 374, 388, 408, 414, 418, 422, 426
 Old Testament patriarchs, 478, 490, 493
 Old Text and New Text controversy, 156
 Olszty Castle, 507 (a)
Olympiodorus (Neo-Platonic chemist, c. +500), 318, 327, 331, 338, 344, 345, 348, 357, 374, 375, 399, 456, 473
 Omens, 311
 Omissions from Previous Pharmaceutical Natural Histories. See *Pēn Tshao Shih I*
 On Alchemy (Pseudo-Albertus). See *De Alchemia*
 On Alums and Salts. See *De Aluminibus et Salibus*
 On the Art of Distillation of Compound Bodies. See *Liber de Arte Distillandi de Compositis*
 On the Arts and Sciences of the Chinese. See *De Artibus et Scientiis Sinarum*
 On Burning Water. See *Libellus de Aqua Ardentis*
 On the Caerulean Jade and Cinnabar Jade-Treew-in-a-Cold-Forest Casing Process. See *Pi Yü Chu Sha Han Lin Yü Shu Kuei*
 On Chemes the Founder of the Sciences. See *De Chemo Scientiarum Auctore*
 On the Composition of ‘Alchemy’ (i.e. the Elixir). See *De Compositione Alchemiae*
 On the Conservation of Youth and the Retardation of Old Age. See *Liber de Conservatione Juventutis et Retardatione Senectutis*
 On the Distilling Art. See *De Ratione Distillandi*
 On the Dragon in the Heavens. See *De Dracone Coelisti*
 On Dyeing. See *Baphica*
 On Elective Attractions. See *De Attractionibus Electivis*
 On Farming. See *De Re Rustica*
 On Fiery Devices for the Burning of Enemies. See *Liber Ignium ad Comburendos Hostes*
 On the Finding of the Truth. See *De Inventione Veritatis*
 On Furnaces. See *Liber Fornicum*
 On Generation. See *Peri Gennēsōs*
 On Heretics, and their opinions. See *De Hereticis* . . .
 On Hermetic Medicine. See *De Hermetica Medicina*
 On Idolatry. See *De Idolatria*
 On the Investigation of Perfection. See *De Investigatione Perfectionis*
 On Isis and Osiris. See *De Iside et Osiride*
 On the Literary Culture of the Chinese. See *De Literaria Sinensium*
 On the Manufacture of Saltpetre. See *Shoseki Seirendo*
 On Metals and Mines. See *De Re Metallica* (Agricola) and *De Rebus Metallicis et Mineralibus* (Albertus)
 On the Mutual Responses of Things according to their Categories. See *Wu Lei Hsiang Kan Chih*
 On the Mysterious Bright Powder. See *Hsüan Ming Fēn Chuan*
 On Numinous Cinnabar Seven Times Cyclically Transformed. See *Chi Fan Ling Sha Lun*
 On the Origins and Progress of Chemistry. See *De Ortu et Progressu Chemiae*
 On the Origins and Progress of Medical Science. See *I Hsiēh Yuan Liu Lun*
 On the Pigments and Arts of the Romans. See *De Coloribus et Artibus Romanorum*
 On the Powder. See *Peri Xēriou*

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

INDEX

737

- On the Question of the Quintessence. See *De Consideratione Quintae Essentiae*
 On the Retardation of the Troubles of Old Age. See *De Retardatione Accidentium Senectutis*
 On Secret Remedies. See *De Remediis Secretis*
 On the Secrets of Nature; or, the Quintessence. See *De Secretis Naturae seu de Quinta Essentia*
 On the Seventy Books of John. See *Liber de Septuaginta Iohannis*
 On the Soul of the Alchemical Art (Pseudo-Avicenna). See *De Anima in Arte Alchemiae*
 On Spirits and Substances. See *De Spiritibus et Corporibus*
 On Statues (Porphyry), 489 (b)
 On Stimuli and Responses in Nature. See *Kan Ying Ching*
 On Sympathies and Antipathies. See *Peri Sympatheion kai Antipatheion*
 On Various Matters. See *Variarum Observationium Liber*
 On Various Techniques. See *De Diversis Artibus*
 On Women's Arts. See *De Cultu Femininarum*
 The One Hundred and Twelve Books, 393
 Oneiromancy, 390
 Oneness of the Universe, 359
 Onyx, 427 (b), 449
 Ophite Gnostics. See *Gnostics*
 Opinions of Balinās on Mineral Substances. See *Kitāb al-Āhjār 'alā Ra'y Balinās*
 Opposites
 polarity of, 251–2
 problems of, in medicine, 157 (b)
 reconciliation of, 253, 257, 290, 318, 319, 322, 323, 455–6
 union of, 321
 Optical phenomena, 314
Opus Majus (Roger Bacon), 492, 494 (c, e), 495 (i, j)
Opus Minus (Roger Bacon), 495 (a, e, f), 496 (a)
Opus Tertium (Roger Bacon), 495
 Oracle-bones, 51
 Oral instruction, 358
 Oral Instructions on the Entry of the Red Lead into the Black Lead. See *Hung Chhien Ju Hei Chhien Chüeh*
 Oral Instructions Explaining the Abscondite Truths of the Gold and Caerulean Jade Components of the Metallous Enchymoma. See *Chin Tan Chin Pi Chhien Thung Chieh*
 Oral Instructions on Many Formulae for Cyclically Transformed Elixirs. See *Huan Tan Chou Hou Chüeh*
 Orange Record. See *Chü Lu*
 Oranges. See Citrous fruits
 Order, in Chinese thought-system, 306
 Order of Nature, 248
Ordinall of Alchemy (Thomas Norton, c. +1477), 499
 Organic acids, and surface-enrichment techniques, 353
 Organic pattern, 306
 Organic substances, 395, 398, 401, 435
 putrefaction of, 204
 as reagents to precipitate impurities, 184
 in solubilisation recipes, 176, 177, 204–5
 versus mineral and metallic, in elixir-making, 497 (d)
 Organic view of the universe, 323, 502
 Origen (patristic writer, +185 to +254), 378
 Original Mirror of Alchemical Preparations. See *Tan Fang Chien Yuan*
 Ornithine cycle, 384
 Orpiment, 184, 191, 217, 231, 232, 287, 288, 291, 294, 295, 317, 320, 356
 aqueous solution of, 170
 Orrhoē (Edessa), 426
 Orthodox Manual of External Medicine. See *Wai Kho Chēng Tsung*
 Orthography
 of *hsiao*, 182
 of *nao*, 445–6
 Oscillatory motion, within the reaction-vessel, 283
 Osrhoene-Euphratensis, 426
 Ostanes the Mede, 312, 326, 333, 334–5, 354, 387, 399, 401 (c), 412 (d), 415, 456
 Ostjaks. See Tribal peoples
 'Other-worldly' conceptions, 379
 Otter, 316
 Ouroboros symbol, 359 (d), 362, 374 ff., 380, 385
 in Chinese art, 380–1, 383
 as symbol of eternal recurrence, 374, 376
 two intertwined Ouroboroi, 376, 378–9
 Ouroboros-Leviathan, 378
 Outer Elixir (*wai tan*), 227, 233, 249
 Overflow pipe, 64, 65 (a)
 Oxidation, 172, 175
 and deoxidation, 358
 of mercury, 21
 Oxidation-reduction reactions, 173, 176, 179, 455
 Oxide films, 358
 Oxides, 229, 245
 Oxus river, 370, 409, 422
 Oxymel. See *Sakanjabin*
 Oxyrhynchus Papyrus, 473 (j)
 Oya Shin'ichi (I), 193
 Pa Fēng Ku (Valley of the Eight Winds), 140 (e)
 Pa Kung (the Eight Adepts), 168, 172, 330
 Pabna, 105
 'Pace of Yü' (ritual dance), 468
 'Pachyma spirit', 235
 Pagan culture, and the Hellenistic proto-chemical tradition, 328
Pai-chiu (spirits, lit. white wine), 142
 Pai Chü-I (Thang poet, +772 to +846), 142–3, 148
Pai hsi chin (white tin 'gold'), 295
Pai hu kuei (white tiger casing), 19
Pai kan (erh) ('white and dry', name for distilled spirits), 66, 142
 Pai-shan, sal ammoniac caves at, 438, 440
Pai thung (white copper). See *Paktong*
Pai yen (white salt), 20

- Pai Yü-Chhan (Sung alchemist, fl. +1209 to +1224), 275 (a)
- Painters, 416
- Pakistan, 131
- Paktong (*pai thung*), 33, 432
- Palestine, 105, 111, 333, 336
- Pálinka, 111
- Palladius, Rutilius Taurus Aemilianus (agriculturist and geographer, +4th century), 498 (c)
- Pallas, P. S. (naturalist and traveller, +1741 to 1811), 103
- Palm toddy, 110, 111
- Palsy, 431
- Pamir Mtns., 422
- Pammenes (Hellenistic proto-chemist), 84, 327
- Pan-Chha-Cho Shui*, 197
- 'Panaceal Sublimed Yellow Powder', 287
- Panarios* (Epiphanius), 386 (e)
- Panodorus (Egyptian monk, fl. c. +400), 339, 340
- Panopolis, 397
- Panseris (Hellenistic proto-chemist, +2nd century), 327
- Pao phing* ('precious vase', perhaps a digester), 20-21
- Pao Phu Tzu* (Book of the Preservation-of-Solidarity-Master), 134, 168, 175, 182 (c), 185 (f), 202, 207, 208 (a), 214, 255, 279, 331, 353, 440, 470
- Pao Tsang Lun* (Discourse on the Precious Treasury of the Earth), 187, 393 (l), 441
- Pao Yen Thang Pi Chi* (Private Collection of the Pao-Yen Library), 310 (b)
- Paper, 451
- Paper-makers, 416
- Paper money, 204, 417 (g)
- Paracelsus (Theophrastus von Hohenheim, +1493 to +1541), 152, 153, 198, 202, 318, 322, 455, 484, 487, 491, 502, 505 ff.
- Paradise
- Chinese, 217, 493
 - Muslim, 490
- Paradise of Wisdom. *See* Firdaws al-Hikma
- Paraffin, 205-6
- Paraffin wax, distillation of, 100, 102
- Paragranum* (Paracelsus), 505, 506 (c)
- Parallelism, historical, in development of chemistry in East and West, 312 (g), 324 ff.
- Paramirum* (Paracelsus), 506
- Parmenides (Eleatic philosopher, b. c. —540), 344
- Parr, Thomas, autopsy on, 507
- Parthia, and the Parthians, 333, 336, 354
- envoys from, 332
- Partington, J. R., 196; (3), 322
- Patanjali (Indian grammarian, fl. —2nd century), 131
- Patriarch Gregorius. *See* Abū al-Faraj al-Malāṭī
- Patzcuaro, Lake, 106, 108
- Paul of Aegina (physician and medical writer, late +7th century), 476 (b), 491
- de Pauw, C. (+1774), 324
- Peach, 453
- Peaches of immortality, 217
- Pearl
- guarded by a coiled dragon, 377
 - placed in the mouth of a dead man, 420
- Pearls, 326 (b), 350
- artificial, 221
- Peasant rebellions. *See* Rebellions
- Pebechius (Hellenistic proto-chemist, +2nd century), 327, 333, 345
- Pehlevi language, 313, 334
- Pei Hu Lu* (Records of the Countries where the Doors open to the North (to catch the sun), i.e. Jih-Nan and Lin-I), 207 (h)
- Pei-shan mountain, 438
- Pei Shan Chiu Ching* (Northern Mountain Wine Manual), 44, 145
- Pei Shih* (History of the Northern Dynasties), 440
- Pei-thing (mod. Urumchi), 441
- Peking
- Archaeological Institute of Academia Sinica, 13
 - Imperial Palace Museum, 162
 - initiation hall of a Taoist community in, 378
 - National Institute of Archaeology, 23, 24, 26, 27, 28, 29
- Pelagius (Hellenistic proto-chemist, +2nd century), 327
- 'Pelican'. *See* Stills, retort type
- Pén Ching*. *See* *Shen Nung Pén Tshao Ching*
- Pén Tshao Ching Chi Chu* (Collected Commentaries on the Pharmacopoeia . . .), 169 (b), 185 (b), 440
- Pén Tshao Kang Mu* (The Great Pharmacopoeia), 132, 135-6, 149, 181, 197 (c), 206, 208, 315 (k), 440
- Pén Tshao Kang Mu Shih I* (Supplementary Amplifications of the Great Pharmacopoeia), 173, 175
- Pén Tshao Phin Hui Ching Yao* (Essentials of the Pharmacopoeia Ranked according to Nature and Efficacy), 45 (c), 47, 58 (e), 137 (b), 183, 187 (e)
- Pén Tshao Shih I* (Omissions from Previous Pharmaceutical Natural Histories), 62, 440
- Pén Tshao Thu Ching* (Illustrated Pharmacopoeia), 58, 186 (d), 189, 190, 208, 441
- Pén Tshao Yen I* (Dilations upon Pharmaceutical Natural History), 241, 442
- Pén Tshao Yen I Pu I* (Revision and Amplification of the 'Dilations upon Pharmaceutical Natural History'), 181 (a)
- Pepper, 498 (c)
- Peppermint oil (*po ho yu*), 159
- stills for, 66, 116, 117-18
- Perfumes, 159, 160, 421, 501
- for keeping insects away from clothes, 161
 - preparation of, 54, 82-3, 129, 160
 - still for, 54
- Peri Gennēsōs* (On Generation), 488 (c)
- Peri Sympatheion kai Antipatheiōn* (Bolus of Mendes), 311, 325
- Peri Xēriou* (On the Powder), 473
- Peripatetic philosophy, 361, 374

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

INDEX

739

- Perpetual motion, 487, 488, 489
machines, 495
- Perry, E. S. & Hecker, J. C. (1), 101
- Persepolis, 333
- Persia and the Persians, 57, 324, 333, 346, 354, 425, 437, 449
alchemical texts, 415
alchemy, 412
Arabic culture and, 389, 408, 470, 490
atomism, lack of interest in, 374
Chinese contacts with, 416
drugs, 447
Empire, 409
fall of, 416
influence on Mediterranean culture, 334–5
languages, 313, 334, 352, 444
merchants, 418, 419, 420
metallurgical techniques, 335
proto-chemists, 386
religion, 379, 396
‘Persian brass’ fragments, 320
- Persian Gulf, 332
- Perspective, 11 (c)
- Pestle and mortar
cast-iron, 162, 163
bronze, 162, 164
jade and stone, 162, 167
- Petasius (Hellenistic proto-chemist, +2nd century), 327, 335
- Petosiris (Hellenistic proto-chemist, +2nd century), 327
- Petroleum, 121, 158, 205, 320
fractional distillation of, 129
- Petrus Bonus of Ferrara (*fl. c. +1330?*), 454, 484
- Phan Yuan-Wén (+5th-century alchemist), 219
- Phánta* water, 197 (g)
- Phao Chih Lun*. See *Lei Kung Phao Chih Lun*
- Phao tshai kuan*. See *Chi tshai kuan*
- Pharmaceutical laboratory
tools and apparatus for, 162–7
- Pharmaceutical natural histories, 180, 181, 182, 189, 200, 334, 440
- Pharmaceutical Natural History of the Khai-Pao reign-period. See *Khai-Pao Pén Tshao*
- Pharmaceutical Natural History of the Chia-Yu reign-period. See *Chia-Yu Pén Tshao*
- Pharmaceutical Natural History of the Earth’s Mansions Immortal. See *Thu Hsiu Chen Chün Pén Tshao*
- Pharmaceutical Natural History of the Westerners. See *Hu Pén Tshao*
- Pharmaceutical naturalists, 184, 186, 484
- Pharmacology, 393, 506, 507
- Pharmacopoeia of the Heavenly Husbandman. See *Shen Nung Pén Tshao Ching*
- Pharmacopoeias, 184
- Pharmacy and pharmaceutics, 70, 162, 189, 311, 392, 507, 508
- Pharos at Alexandria, 488 (h)
- ‘Phase-sequential’, 278
- Phei Chü (traveller and writer, +610), 440
- Phêng Hsiao (Taoist priest and alchemist, c. +945), 249, 265, 266
- Phêng-Lai, 408 (c)
- Phêng Ssu (alchemical writer, +1225), 3, 35, 148, 292, 322
- Phêng Ssu & Mêng Hsü, 3, 74, 275, 322
- Pherecydes of Syros (Pre-Socratic philosopher, d. —515), 346, 360
- Phi kuei* (arsenical lead casing), 19
- Philip of Tripoli (translator, c. +1243), 368
- Philippines, 110
- Philon of Byblos (grammarian and bibliographer, c. +60 to c. +120), 334
- Philosopher’s Egg, 297, 367
- Philosopher’s Stone, 351, 357, 365, 366, 481, 499
- Philosophia Moysaica* (Fludd), 503 (e)
- Philosophus Anonymus (+7th-century proto-chemist), 327, 350, 473 (h)
- Philosophus Christianus (late +6th-century proto-chemist), 327
- ‘Philosophy of the Oracles’ (Porphyry), 489 (b)
- Phlogiston, theory, 384, 455
- Pho* (Yin ‘souls’), 228 (b), 230, 470
- Phoenicians, 335
- Phoenix-Brain Chih (peach-like fruit), 217
- Phosphorylation cycles, 384
- Photius (Byzantine Patriarch, commentator and bibliographer, +820 to c. +900), 328
- Phu hsiao* (‘crude-solve’), 181–4, 185, 186, 187, 190, 193
- Physica* (books on Nature, on causes and effects, sympathies and antipathies), 396
- Physica* (Hermes), 340
- Physica Dynamera*. See *Peri Sympatheion kai Antipatheion*
- Physica kai Mystica* (Pseudo-Democritus), 311, 326–7, 331, 360 (c)
- Physicians, 70, 189, 235, 240, 299, 411, 424, 473, 476, 492
- Jewish, 447–8
- Physics, 211, 226, 230, 244, 277, 308
and chemistry, distinction between, 298
mathematical, 305
modern, 308
theories of, 223
- Physiognomy, 297, 390
- Physiological alchemy (*nei tan*). See Alchemy, physiological
- Pi Yü Chu Sha Han Lin Yü Shu Kuei* (On the Caerulean Jade and Cinnabar Jade-Tree-in-a-Cold-Forest Casing Process), 261 (c)
- Picatrix*, 313, 427 (c), 427 (f), 449, 463 (h), 489 (f)
- Pickling, 29, 442,
pot, 30
- Pictographs, on oracle-bones, 51
- Pigments
blue-black, 299
in seal ink, 302
vermilion, 302
- Pills, 191, 260
- Pincers, for pulling out hairs, 431
- Pine resin, 235, 236
- Pisselaion*. See Pitch, oil of

- Pistis Sophia*, 378, 387
 Pitch, oil of, technique of obtaining, 95
 Pizzimenti, Domenico (editor, fl. +1572), 324, 328 (a)
Placita Philosophorum (Pseudo-Plutarch), 459
 'Plain, naked, natural way of speaking', 324 (b)
 Planetary cycles, 222
 and the Ouroboros symbol, 377
 Planetary gods, 427
 Planets
 alchemy and, 225
 associated with metals, 373, 427–8
 associated with mineral deposits, 233
 influence of, 227, 230
 interactions of, 230
 in Sābian symbolic correlation system, 427–8
 seminal essences of, 227
 See also Five Planets
 Plant drugs. See Drugs
 Plant lore, 342
 Plant genera
 Acorus, 432 (k)
 Agave, 108 (a)
 Aquilaria, 160 (h)
 Azalea, 238 (a)
 Bassia, 106 (c)
 Borassus, 145
 Buddleia, 111
 Cannabis, 213
 Cinnamomum, 171 (d), 452 (g)
 Citrus, 145 (f), 160 (g)
 Coptis, 452
 Croton, 453 (d)
 Curcuma, 452 (h)
 Cuscuta, 235 (a)
 Dalbergia, 160 (i)
 Dasylyrion, 110 (e)
 Dorema, 436 (b)
 Fritillaria, 320 (c)
 Gleditschia, 183 (k)
 Glycyrrhiza, 191 (a)
 Illicium, 118, 119 (a)
 Imperata, 145
 Kaempferia, 452 (h)
 Lophophora, 108 (a)
 Madhura, 106 (c)
 Melanorrhoea, 209 (c)
 Mentha, 66, 159 (d)
 Nelumbo, 238 (a)
 Nipa, 136 (a), 145
 Pachyma, 235 (a)
 Phaseolus, 294 (f)
 Polyporus, 235 (a)
 Prunus, 453 (b, c)
 Pterocarpus, 316 (e)
 Rheum, 453 (a)
 Rhododendron, 238 (a)
 Rhus, 208
 Rosa, 159 (f), 161
 Terminalia, 299 (c)
 Vitex, 205
 Vitis, 137
 Weigelia, 98 (g)
 Zingiber, 452 (i)
 Plant of immortality, 329, 481
 Plant tissues, darkening of, 209
 Plants, 387
 growth-cycles of, 243, 246
 as indicators of ore beds, 314
 instant growth of, by magic, 246 (b)
 nutrition of, 384
 Plato, 322, 360
 Plato of Tivoli (translator, fl. c. +1140), 368
 Pleasant Gifts and Traits of Character. See
 Laṭā'if al-Minan wa'l-Akhlāq
 Pleasant Sorts of Knowledge. See *Laṭā'if al-Ma'*
 'arif
 Pliny (+77), 60, 95, 161, 202, 205, 326 (b), 334,
 338, 364 (c), 433
 Plutarch (c. +95), 347, 348
Pneuma, 222, 470
Po Wu Chih (Record of the Investigation of
 Things), 151, 207, 309
 Poem on the Particles of Gold. See *Diwān*
 Shudhūr al-Dhabhab
 Poetical Treatise on the . . . Primary Vitalities.
 See *Wu Chen Phien*
Poimandres (Hermetic book), 359 (h), 376 (d)
 Pointing the Way Home (to Life Eternal); a
 Collection. See *Chih Kuei Chi*
 Poison-ivy, 209
 Poison-maiden, 399
 Poison-oak, 209
 Poisoning, and poisonous substances, 174, 208,
 209–10, 227, 312, 399, 413, 442, 459, 479
 elixir and, 483
 by the fumes of burning coal, 314
 Hellenistic proto-chemistry and, 484
 snake-bite, 479–80
 Poissonnier, P. J. (+1779), 98
 Poland, 111
 Polarity of opposites, 251–2, 322 (g)
 Pole Star, 242
 Polishing, 449
 cream, 452
 sand, 449
 Polo, Marco (+1254 to +1323), 44, 141, 150,
 485, 497–8
 Polyhydroxy-benzoic acid, 299
 Polyphenol-oxidases, 209
 Polysaccharides, 135
 Polysulphides, 176, 204
 'Pomegranate' flask, 58
 Porcelain, 324, 450
 oldest Arabic reference to, 451
 Porphyry of Tyre (Neo-Platonic philosopher,
 b. +223), 488 (c), 489 (b)
 della Porta, G. B. (Giambattista, thaumaturgical
 alchemist and technologist, +1535 to
 +1615), 94
 Portugal and the Portuguese, 417
 Poseidonius of Apamea (astronomer and meteoro-
 logist, —135 to c. —51), 325
 Postrions, 384

INDEX

741

- 'Pot and gun-barrel' still, 112–13
 Potash, 179, 181
 Potassium acetate, 173
 alum, 225
 arsenite, 192
 nitrate. *See* Saltpetre
 Potassium flame test. *See* Experimentation
 Potassium ions, 179
 Potassium sodium, aluminium silicate aqueous solution of, 171
 Pott, A. F. (1876), 347
 Pottery and porcelain industry, 118
 Pounding instruments, 162
 'Practice of the Emperor Justinian', 196
 Pre-Socratic philosophers, 224, 322, 360, 399
 Precious Bags of Travelling Provisions (geography). *See* *Kitāb al-Ā'lāq al-Nafisa*
 Precious metals, 349, 390
 dilution of, 351, 358, 363, 405
 imitation or 'multiplication' of, 365. *See also* *Diplōsis* and *Triplōsis*
 Precious stones. *See* Gems
 Precipitation, 8, 9
 of metallic copper from its salts by iron, 201–4, 311
 Pregnancy, charm for, 463
 Preservation techniques
 alcohol and, 122
 Pressure, generation of, 22, 40
 Pressure-tubing connections, 40
Pretiosa Margarita Novella (Petrus Bonus), 454 (d), 484 (g)
 Priestley, Joseph (chemist, +1733 to +1804), 433
 Priests, Egyptian, 124
Prima materia, 361, 388, 401, 405
 Principles of Correct Diet. *See* *Yin Shan Chēng Yao*
 Printing of proto-chemical and alchemical texts, 84 (b)
 Prismatic nitre, 184 (d)
 Private Collection of the Pao-Yen Library. *See* *Pao Yen Thang Pi Chi*
Pro Conservanda Sanitatis (Vital du Four), 196
 Prodigies, 325
 Prognostication, 342, 390
 Han books on, 465
 Prohibitions
 on drinking, 147
 on private wine-making, 147
 Projection, 9, 74, 295, 330, 344, 351, 357, 358, 365, 388, 391, 473, 474
 technical terms for. *See* Technical terms
 Prolegomena to History. *See* *Muqaddima*
 Prolongevity. *See* Material immortality and longevity
 Pronouncements of the Company of the Immortals on Cyclically Transformed Elixirs.
 See *Huan Tan Chung Hsien Lun*
 Proof spirit, 123 (h)
 Proofs of the Secret Science of the Balance. *See* *Al-Burhān fi 'Ilm Asrār 'Ilm al-Mizān*
 'Prophecies of Cham', 346
 Proportional constitution of natural objects, 394
 Proteins, 205, 295, 367–8
 tanning of, 209
 Proto-chemical aphorisms, 344, 358–68, 374, 392
 Proto-chemistry, 193, 244, 298 ff., 311, 323, 324, 330, 354, 365, 368, 455–6, 507
 Arabic. *See* Arabic proto-chemistry
 Byzantine. *See* Byzantine proto-chemists
 Hellenistic. *See* Hellenistic proto-chemists
 Proto-gunpowder. *See* Gunpowder, formulae
 Proto-Manichaeism, 385
 Proto-science, 224, 233, 243, 244, 247, 278, 298, 387, 459, 472
 Psellus, Michael (statesman, historian, Platonic philosopher and proto-chemical compiler, +1018 to +1078), 84, 328, 500, 501
 Pseudo-Albertus, 366
 Pseudo-Aquinas, 487 (h)
 Pseudo-Aristotle, 297, 368, 369, 448, 449, 450 (a), 494, 497 (a)
 Pseudo-Avicenna, 435
 Pseudo-Clement of Rome (c. +220), 343 (b), 346
 Pseudo-Cleopatra (Hellenistic woman proto-chemist), 72, 84, 327, 345, 364, 375, 387
 Pseudo-Damigeron (c. —200), 334
 Pseudo-Democritus (Hellenistic +1st-century proto-chemist), 84, 311, 312, 325, 326, 327, 331, 333, 334, 335, 339, 344, 345, 348, 354, 357, 364, 387, 415
 vision in the temple, 335
 Pseudo-Ja'far, 391, 481 (f)
 Pseudo-al-Majritī, 313 (f), 401 (g), 427 (c), 486
 Pseudo-al-Mas'ūdi, 488 (h)
 Pseudo-Plutarch, 459
 Pseudo-Porphry, 488 (c)
 Pseudo-Roger Bacon, 495 (a)
 Pseudo-science, 471, 472, 489
 Pseudo-Zosimus, 337, 341 (e)
Pseudodoxia Epidemica (Sir T. Browne), 152 (h)
Psyche, 470
 Psychical integration, 240
 Psychological strains, 501
 Ptolemaic period of Egypt, 333, 349
 Ptolemy (astronomer, c. +150)
 translation of, 411
 Ptolemy I (first king of Egypt, after Alexander, d. —284), 333
 Ptolemy II, Philadelphus (r. —284 to —246), and elixirs of life, 355 (g)
 Puff, M. *See* von Schrick, Michale Puff
Pulque, 108 (a)
 Purity, chemical, concept of, 481 (c)
 Purple (colour), 356
 'Purple cinnabar', 262
 Purple flame of potassium, 185–6, 187, 194
 Purple Gold Yellow Sprouts, 260
 Purple Palace, 465 (e)
 'Purple sheen gold', 356
 Puppets, 488
 Pushkalāvati, receiver-bottles for stills found at, 132
 Putrefaction, 8, 9, 204, 205, 374, 487

742

INDEX

- Pyramid texts, 348, 375
 Pyrites, 198, 199, 313
 hepatic iron, 200
 Pyroligneous acid, 178
 Pyrotechnics, 158
 Pyruvic acid, 384
 Pythagoras, 304, 409, 462, 469, 502
 Pyx. See *Yao fu*
- Qabas al-Qabis fi Tadbir Hirmis al-Haramisa*
 (The Brand of the Fire-Seeker; Procedure
 of Hermes of the line of Hermes), 412 (f)
- Qādī* (headman, *fang chang*), 417
Qādī al-Rashid ibn al-Zubair (mineralogist,
 + 11th century), 390
Qānūn fi al-Tibb (Canon of Medicine), 423 (e)
 Qarā-Khitāi (Western Liao kingdom), 485
 Qara-Khoja, 141
 Qarmatian movement, 396–7
Qattara still, 130
 al-Qazwīnī, Abū Yahyā Zakariyā ibn Maḥmūd
 (cosmographer, +1203 to +1283), 430–1,
 437 (b), 449, 450 (a)
Quaestiones Naturales (Seneca), 362
 Quantitative composition of all bodies, 459, 461
 Quantitative figures, in medieval Chinese texts,
 56 (a), 166 (c)
 Quarter Day calendrical system (*Ssu Fēn Li*).
 See *Ssu Fēn Li*
 Quartz, 187, 188, 205, 235, 288
 drusy, 240
 al-Qubādiyānī, Nāṣir-i-Khusraw (Ismā'ili poly-
 math, d. +1060), 424 (f)
 Questions and Answers on the Great Elixir. See
 Ta Tan Wén Ta
 Quicksilver. See Mercury
 Quietism, 246
 Quintessence (the missing fifth element), 499
 ‘Quintessence’ derived from wine, 122
 Qumran texts, 461 (f)
Qu'rān. See Koran
 Quṣṭā ibn Lūqā al-Ba'labbakkī (translator, d. c.
 +912), 411
- Rabbān Bar Sauma (Nestorian priest from
 Peking, c. +1225 to +1320), 485 (a)
 al-Rādhāniyān (Jewish merchants trading between
 China and Provence via Persia, +9th
 century), 421 (a), 485 (b)
 Rainbow, 51, 52
 ‘Rainbow vessel’ (*kung tēng*), 49–51, 54–5
 Rajputana, 106
Ramayana, 131
 Rampur MS. Codex or Corpus, 404 (c), 415,
 436 (e)
 Rangaku (Dutch learning) period in Japan, 502
 distillation apparatus of, 114
 Rarefaction, 222
 Ra's al- ‘Ayn (Resain), 410
Rasā'il Ikhwān al-Safā' (Epistles of the Brethren
 of Sincerity), 395 (g), 396, 463 (h), 469 (k),
 486
- Rasaprakāśa-sudhākara*, 198
Rasaratna-samuccchaya, 55 (e), 104, 198
Rasāñava Tantra, 198
Rasāñavakalpa, 198, 498 (a)
Rasāyana, 132, 349 (g)
Rasendra-chūḍāmani (Somadeva), 104, 198
 Rāshid al-Dīn al-Hamdānī (historian, d. +1318),
 138, 413, 414
 al-Rashid. See *Qādī al-Rashid* . . .
 Ratledge, C. (1), 44
 Ray, P. C., 104, 198
 al-Rayy, 333, 398, 421 (a)
 al-Rāzī, Abū Bakr Muḥammad ibn Zakariyā
 (physician and alchemist, +865 to +925),
 55 (e), 83, 129, 397, 398, 403, 427, 431, 469,
 487 (h), 491
 Razuq, F. R. (1), 402
 Reactants-and-vessel
 parallelism with foetus and womb, 293
 Reaction-vessels, 16 ff., 219
 centering of, within a directionally-oriented
 elaboratory, 289
 cosmic correspondences in, 279–81, 281 ff.
 and the egg, 292, 293, 367
 ingredients within the, 293
 likened to primordial chaos (*hun-tun*), 250, 292
 reactants and microcosmic configurations, 287,
 288, 289
 rendered air-tight, 163
 sealed, 22–6, 253, 289
 water-cooled, 36, 37, 38–9, 40, 41, 42
 with cooling water above and fire below, 282–3,
 285
 water below and fire above, 285
 Reactions between opposites, 318
 Reactivities and affinities, 312
 Read, B. E., 368–9; (12), 192, 193
 Read, B. E. & Pak, C. (1), 205, 206
 Read, T. T. (4), 201
 Reagents. See Chemical reagents
 Realgar, 173, 217, 225, 226, 228, 229, 231, 232,
 287, 288, 291, 297, 317, 320, 356
 medicinal use of, 191
 solubilisation of, 168, 170, 172, 186
 Realisation Canon of the Eightfold Simplicity . . .
 See *Shang-Chhing Thai-Shang Pa Su Chen Ching*
 ‘Realised’ Lead and Mercury, or Metal and
 Water, 254 ff., 259, 283 (a)
 Rebellions
 of An Liu-Shan, 416
 Arab revolt in Canton, 417
 Chinese peasant rebellion, 417
 Receiver vessels of stills, 86, 132
 cooling of, 70, 86
Recherches Philosophiques . . . (de Pauw), 324
 Recipes. See Latin recipe-books; Solubilisation
 recipes
Recognitiones (Pseudo-Clement), 346 (e)
 Record of the Great Enchymoma. See *Ta Tan Chi*
 Record of Institutions of the Chou Dynasty.
 See *Chou Li*

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

INDEX

743

- Record of the Investigation of Things. *See Po Wu Chih*
- Record of the Mutual Resonances of Things. *See Kan Ying Lei Tshung Chih*
- Record of Rites. *See Li Chi*
- Record of Rites of the elder Tai. *See Ta Tai Li Chi*
- Records of Barbarian Customs. *See I Su Chi*
- Records of the Countries where the Doors open to the North . . . *See Pei Hu Lu*
- Records of Foreign Countries. *See Wu Shih Wai Kuo Chuan*
- Records of Foreign Peoples and their Trade. *See Chu Fan Chih*
- Records of the Kinship of the Three. *See Tshan Thung Lu*
- Records of the Ornamental Pavilion. *See Chuang Lou Chi*
- Records of the Rock Chamber. *See Thai-Chhing Shih Pi Chi*
- Records of the Unworldly and the Strange. *See Chhing I Lu*
- Red (colour), 456
- Red Marrow, 317
- Red mung bean, 294
- Reddening, 9
- Reflection in plane mirrors, 314
- Reflux distillation. *See Distillation*
- Reflux extractors, 76
- Refrigerating coils, 40
- Refutatio Omnim Haeresium* (attrib. Hippolytus of Rome), 124, 385 (e), 399
- 'Refutation of al-Kindī with regard to his including Alchemy in the Category of the Impossible' (al-Rāzī), 398
- 'Regular meals', of life elixir, 480, 481, 483
- Reincarnation, 420, 485
- A Relation of China and India. *See Akhbār al-Śin wa'l-Hind*
- Reliefs
- Han, 465
 - Susa, 376
- Religion, 426
- Babylonian, 426
 - Chaldaean, 426
 - indigenous eastern, 410–11
- Remaining Records of Discourses of the Chhēng brothers of Honan. *See Honan Chhēng Shih I Shu*
- Remedies
- artificial sympathetic, 325
 - crab tissues used in, 208, 209
 - for poisoning by the fumes of burning coal, 314
- Renaissance (Europe), 129, 185, 212, 253, 313, 314, 433, 491
- Renaldus of Cremona (+12th-century translator), 403
- Rennet, 367
- Renou, L. & Filliozat, J., 198
- Reorganised Pharmacopoeia. *See Chēng Lei Pēn Tshao*
- Replication, 366
- Repression, of human desires, 500–1
- Resain, 410
- Resistance-to-fire concept, 453
- Resonance, 273–4, 277, 292, 306, 307, 308, 310, 316, 322, 502
- Respiratory techniques. *See Breathe control*
- Responsum de Longaevitate* (Maimonides), 478 (b)
- Resurrection, 488 (j), 494
- alchemical model of, 478 (a)
 - of the body, 361 (d)
- Reti, Ladislao, 92, 93, 98 (i), 115 (b), 123 (b, c), 125 (a, e), 129 (d), 131 (b), 178 (c)
- Retort type of still. *See Stills*
- Reuvens, C. J. C., 347
- Revision and Amplification of the 'Dilations upon Pharmaceutical Natural History'. *See Pēn Tshao Yen I Pu I*
- Rhizotomoi, 342 (a)
- Rhodes, 333
- Rhubarb, 453
- Rhus vernicifera*, 208
- Ribonucleoproteins, 366
- Rice
- fermentation of, 136
 - used in making vodka-like spirits, wine, 64, 142 (c)
- Rickard, T. A. (3), 339
- Riding-whips, 452
- Riegel molecular still, 101, 102
- The Right Path. *See Semita Recta* (Pseudo-Albertus)
- Risālat al-Hadhar* (Book of Warning), 415
- Risālat al-Shams ilā l-Hilāl* (Epistle of the Sun to the Crescent Moon), 373 (g), 401
- Rites and ceremonies, 106, 108, 124, 211, 221, 245, 246–7, 248, 290–1, 296, 387
- alchemical, 219, 289–90, 291
 - for the animation of religious images, 488–9
 - at the Hua-Yang Abbey, 215
 - and the organisation of space, 289
- Taoist, 211, 289
- Ritual dance, 468, 478
- River Chariot (*ho chhē*), 254
- 'Robbing Nature for human benefit', 232 (c)
- Robert of Chester (translator, fl. c. +1140), 403
- Robertson, T. Brailsford & Ray, L. A. (1), 98, 100
- Rock-salt, 433
- Rockets, 56 (c), 432
- Rodwell, G. F., 369
- Roe, 208
- Roger of Helmarshausen. *See Theophilus Presbyter*
- Rolfinck, Werner (pharmaceutical chemist, +1599 to +1673), 350
- Roman-Syrian envoys and traders, 332, 354
- The Romance of the Three Kingdoms. *See San Kuo Chih Yen I*
- Rome and the Romans, 57, 332–3, 377, 409
- Rosa Anglica* (John of Gaddesden), 60
- Rosa bifera*, 161
- Rosa multiflora*, 161
- Roscoe, H. E. & Schorlemmer, C., 433

- 'Rose dew' (*chhiang-wei lu*), 159
 Rose oil, 160, 161
 Rose-petals, press-juice of, 159
 Rose-water, 158, 159, 160–1
 distillation of, 128, 159
 Rosemary, 496
 'Rosenhut' still, 125, 127 (a)
 Rosewood, 159
 Rotating statues, 488 (h)
 Rousselle, E., 378
 Royal Ontario Museum, Toronto, 29, 166, 418
 Royal Scottish Museum, Edinburgh, 280
 Royal Society, 314, 324 (b)
Rubedo. *See Reddening*
 de Rubruquis, William. *See Ruysbroeck, William*
 Ruby Stone of the Philosophers, 499
 Rudolf II of Prague (Holy Roman Emperor,
 r. +1575 to +1611), 487 (i), 490
Rūh ('spirit'), 122 (b), 470
 al-Ruhā (Edessa, mod. Urfa), 410
 Ruhland, Martin (alchemical lexicographer,
 +1569 to +1611), 366
 Rule Cycle (*chang*), 222
 Rumania, 111
 al-Rūmī. *See Ostanes (Uṣṭānīs al-Rūmī)* and
 Theophilus of Edessa
Ruodlieb, 498 (c)
 Ruska, J., 344, 347, 389, 396, 399; (2), 391;
 (4), 389; (5), 390, 471; (8), 369, 370, 373;
 (11), 350, 351; (13), 447; (14), 398, 431;
 (32), 408–9; (36), 399
 Russia, 111
 Rusting, 202, 315, 461
 Ruysbroeck, William (+13th-century Franciscan
 traveller), 485
 Ṣābiāns, 409, 411, 426–9, 461, 488 (g)
 al-Sabtī. *See* Ahmād al-Sabtī
 Sacred spaces, 289
 Sacrifices, 175, 427
 human, 414 (g), 427
 to Thai I, 468
 de Sacy, A. I. Silvestre, 431
 Sa'd ibn abi Waqqās (Companion of the Prophet),
 416
 Saddles, 417 (g), 451 (i), 452
Sadhus, 497
 The Sage's Step. *See Rutbat al-Hakim*
 Sa'id Tāj al-Dīn Ḥasan ibn al-Khallāl al-Samarqāndī, 417 (g)
 Śāka period in India (c. –90 to +25), 86
Sakanjabin (oxymel), 479
Saké (Japanese wine), 148
 al-Sakhāiō, Muḥammad ibn al-Akfānī (encyclo-
 paedist, d. +1348), 483
 al-Sakkākī (the Die-Engraver). *See* Ibn abi Bakr
 al-Khwarizmī . . .
 Sal alembroth, 435 (c)
 Sal ammoniac. *See Ammonium Chloride, Am-*
 monium carbonate
Sal volatile, 433
 Sala, Angelus (chemical physician, c. +1576 to
 +1637), 433 (l)
 Salernitan Masters, 44, 123, 127, 157
 al-Ṣāliḥī. *See* al-Kāthī
 Sallām al-Tarjamān ('the interpreter', c. 842),
 425–6
 Salt, 20, 174, 179, 180, 196, 200, 315
 red, 320
 Salt lakes, in Egypt, 180
 Salt monopoly, 147
 Saltpetre, 21, 168–9, 176–7, 181–2, 184, 185, 186,
 187–9, 190, 191–2, 194, 199, 395, 432
 consumption of, 185, 188
 identification of, 186–7
 industry, 192–3
 lack of, in the West, 195–6
 oldest extant Arabic mention of, 194
 in pharmaceutical alchemy, 190
 terminology. *See Technical terms*
 Salts
 separation of, 193
 soluble, 181
 Salvation, belief in, 385
 Samarqand, 370, 409, 416, 422, 423, 439, 451
 al-Samarqandī. *See* 'Aṭā ibn Ahmād . . .
 Najīb al-Dīn . . .
 and Sa'id Tāj al-Dīn . . .
 Samarra, finds of Chinese porcelain at, 451
 Saṃhitās, 131
Samshu (thrice-distilled spirits), 114, 149
 San Chhing (the Three Pure Ones, Taoist Trinity),
 377 (a)
San chih knei (rice cake casing), 19
 San-Chu-Thai (Saljidai, a Mongolian, fl. +1347),
 337
 San Kuo (period), 147, 332, 336, 432
San Kuo Chih Yen I (Romance of the Three
 Kingdoms), 380
 San shao. *See Samshu*
San-shih-liu Shui Ching (Manual of the Thirty-six
 [Methods for] the Bringing of Solids into
 Aqueous Solution), 168
San-shih-liu Shui Fa (Thirty-six Methods for bring-
 ing Solids into Aqueous Solution), 97, 155,
 164, 168, 169, 171, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179,
 185, 188, 197, 201, 203, 204, 205, 207, 208
San shui-kuan (triple water-tube reaction vessel), 39
 San Thung Li (Triple Concordance calendar
 system), 222
 Sand-baths, 32 (b), 76, 96
 Sandalwood, 159
 Sanderswood, 159
Sanioris Medicinae Magistri . . . (Pseudo-Roger
 Bacon), 495 (a)
 Sanitation, 508
 Sanskrit, 313, 411, 415
 Sap, in solubilisation recipes, 205
 Saracens, 323
Sardion. *See* Cornaline
Sardonyx. *See* Cornaline
 Sarwar, G. & Madhīhāssan, S., 481
 Sassanian empire, 370, 409
 coins in Chinese tombs, 416 (g)

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

INDEX

745

- Śatapatha-brāhmaṇa*, 131 (g)
 ‘Satire on the ‘Trades’ (Kheti), 348, 349
 Saturn (planet), 226, 227, 229, 428
Saturnalia (Macrobius), 374 (d)
 Savonarola, Giovanni Michele (physician, +1384 to +1462), 93, 507
Scaphe, 488 (h)
 ‘The Sceptical Chymist’ (Boyle), 153, 472 (g)
 Schafer, E. H., 419, 444
Schatz Euonymi (Gesner), 93
 Schelenz, H. (2), 113, 116, 119
 Schiern, F. (1), 339
 Schiller, Friedrich (poet, +1759 to 1805), 502
 Schipper, Kristofer, 220
 Schlegel, G. (11), 180
 Schmieder, K. C., 391
 Schneider, Wolfgang, 176–7; (1), 353
 von Schrick, Michale Puff (chemical technologist, +1400 to +1473), 125
 Science
 early, 304
 and magic, 240, 314
 modern, 69–70, 264, 273, 275, 308, 311, 503, 508
 Science and technology, as the sources of all evil, 341, 343, 346
 Science of the Balance (‘ilm al-Mīzān), 394, 459, 460, 471, 477
 Science of Generation, 485
 Science of Properties, 395
 Science of Theurgy and Apotropaics, 396
 Scientific knowledge, and spiritual power, 245
 Scientific Revolution, 305, 306, 323, 397, 501
 Scientists, social responsibility of, 343
 Scorpio (constellation), 381
 Scorpion stings, 442
 Scraper, 163
 Scribes. *See* Egyptian scribes
 Scrubbing-towers, 44
 Scythians, 324, 377
 tombs of, 381
 ‘Sea foam’, 124
 Sea-routes, to and from China, 351
 Sea-water
 attempts to overcome unpleasant taste, 61
 fractional distillation of, 61
 methods of obtaining fresh water from, 60, 153
 Sealing mixtures for apparatus. *See* Lute
 Seals
 on receiver-bottles, 132
 inscribed, 376
 Seamstress’ instructions, 4 (a)
 Seasonal changes, and fire phasing, 266–7
 Second Book of the Elements of the Foundation. *See* *Kitāb Uṣṭuqūs al-‘Uṣṣ al-Thāni*
 Second Coming, 396
 The ‘Second Master’. *See* Abū Nasr . . . ibn Uzlagh al-Fārābī
 Secrecy, 70
 and alchemy, 358
 and the magic square, 469
 Secret Art of Penetrating the Mystery. *See* *Thung Hsüan Pi Shu*
 Secret of the Cyclically Transformed Elixir . . . *See* *Yin-Yang Chiu Chuan Chhēng Tzu-Chin Tien-Hua Huan Tan Chiēh*
 ‘Secret Directions for the Yellow Sprouts Great Elixir’, 294
 Secret Instructions on the Names of Drugs and Chemicals. *See* *Yao Ming Yin Chiēh*
 Secrets of the Great Tao. *See* *Ta Tao Mi Chih*
Secretum Secretorum (Pseudo-Aristotle), 297, 368, 398 (e), 484 (h), 494, 497
 ‘Seek for knowledge even as far as China’, 411
 Seiryō-ji Temple (Kyoto), 489 (c)
 Seistan, 439 (c)
 Selenite. *See* Calcium sulphate
 Selenium, 174
 compounds, 174
 Seleucia, 333
 Seleucus I, Nicator (first king of Mesopotamia and Persia, after Alexander, d. c. 280), 333
 Semen, 229, 367
 and the artificial creation of man, 405, 408, 487
 ‘cycling’ of, 233 (f)
 and the homunculus, 487 (h)
 Semi-precious stones, 302
 ‘Seminal essence’, 229, 238
 terms for, 229
Semita Recta (Pseudo-Albertus), 366
 Semitic languages, 480
 Sen, Satiranjan (1), 336
 Seneca (Stoic philosopher, –2 to +66), 362–3
 Senior Zādith Filius Hamuel. *See* Ibn Umail
 Separation (alchemical process), 9
 Separation of two immiscible liquids, 47, 161, 385
 ‘Separating the useless from the useful’, 506
 Sephirothic Tree, 503 (n)
 Sergius (Bishop, scholar and physician, d. +536), 410
 Serjeant, Prof. R. B., 355 (a)
 Serpents, 312, 374, 384
 in Genesis, 377
 sky-, 381
 star-studded, 375
 as symbols of the recurrence of the planetary revolutions, 376
 See also Ouroboros symbol
 Sesostri I (Egyptian XIIth-Dynasty, r. c. 1970 to c. 1936), 348
 Seven Bamboo Tablets of the Cloudy Satchel. *See* *Yün Chi Chhi Chhien*
 Seven Luminaries. *See* Chhi yao books
 The Seventy Books, 393, 403, 451, 461
 Severinus, Peter (Paracelsian physician, +1542 to +1602), 508
 Severus Sebokht (Bp., fl. c. 660), 410 (b)
 Severus bar Shakko (Syriac medical writer, d. c. 1241), 436 (h)
 Sex, 346
 in chemical substances, 400–1
 fear of, 343
 imagery, 259
 role of, in proto-chemistry, 363–4, 503
 of certain stones, 363, 450

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:
Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

746

INDEX

- Sexual techniques, 212, 246, 249, 265, 268, 319
 Sexual union, as analogy for all chemical reaction, 363–4
 Sexualisation, 503
 in Chinese thought, 364
Sha ('sand', or granular crystalline chemical), 444
Sha ho (cinnabar enclosure), 10
Shādanaj. *See* Haematite
Shāhnāma (Firdawsī), 481
 Shaikhān, Sherī, excavations at, 86
 Shaiṭān, 483
 Shakadō, at Seiryō-ji, Kyoto, 489 (c)
 al-Shalmaghānī. *See* Abū Ja‘far Muḥammad ibn abī al-‘Azāqir . . .
 Shang (period), 97, 381, 463
 amalgamation gilding in, 57
 oracle-bones, 51
 pottery and bronze vessels of, 27–8, 30
 Shang-chhēng (Hopei), 189
Shang-Chhing Chiu Chen Chung Ching Nei Chüeh
 (Confidential Explanation of the Interior Manual of the Nine Adepts; a Shang-Chhing Scripture), 175, 211 (a)
Shang-Chhing Hou Shéng Tao Chün Lieh Chi
 (Annals of the Latter-Day Sage, the Lord of the Tao; a Shang-Chhing Scripture), 216 (b)
Shang-Chhing Ling-Pao Ta Fa (The Great Liturgies; a Shang-Chhing Ling-Pao Scripture), 464 (h)
Shang-Chhing Thai-Shang Pa Su Chen Ching
 (Realisation Canon of the Eightfold Simplicity; a Shang-Chhing 'Thai-Shang' Scripture), 215 (b)
Shang-Chhing Thai-Shang Ti Chün Chiu Chen Chung Ching (Ninefold Realised Median Canon of the Imperial Lord, a Shang-Chhing 'Thai-Shang' Scripture), 216
 Shang-ling-tshun, 381
Shang-Tung Hsin Tan Ching Chüeh (An Explanation of the Heart Elixir Canon: a Shang-Tung Scripture), 291, 295
 Shang Yang Tzu. *See* Chhen Chih-Hsü
 Shansi, 141, 186, 192
 analyses of products from, 182
 sal ammoniac from, 438
 Shansi Provincial Historical Museum, 20–21
 Shantung, 192
Shao (heated, boiled, distilled), 147–8
Shao chiu ('burnt-wine', Branntwein), 133, 135, 136, 144
Shao-hsing, 150, 151
Shao Ong (Early Han alchemist and thaumaturgist), 320, 330
 Shapiro, J. (1), 154
Shāpūr I (Sassanian King of Persia, r. +240 to +272), 410 (c)
 al-Shā'rāni, 'Abd al-Wahhāb (alchemical writer, d. + 1565), 408
 'Sharp waters' (Arabic term for caustic alkalies), 128 (b), 195, (d)
 Shaw, Thomas (traveller, +1720), 130 (a)
- Shen Chih-Yen (Thang alchemical writer, fl. +864), 3
Shen Hsien Fu Erh Tan Shih Hsing Yao Fa
 (Methods of the Holy Immortals for Ingesting Cinnabar and other Minerals, and using them Medicinally), 231 (a)
Shen Hsien Lien Tan Tien Chu San Yuan Pao Ching Fa (Methods used by the Holy Immortals to Prepare the Elixir, Project it, and Cast the Precious Mirrors of the Three Powers), 281 (f)
Shen Hsien Thung Chien (General Survey of the Lives of the Holy Immortals), 400
 Shen Kua (astronomer, engineer, naturalist and high official, +1030 to +1094), 201, 202, 203, 204
Shen Nung Pén Tshao Ching (Pharmacopoeia of the Heavenly Husbandman), 45, 137, 182, 184, 187, 189 (b), 200, 202, 237 (e), 277 (c), 315, 316, 439 (f)
Shen shih (magical reaction-chamber), 10, 12, 22, 35
Shen Yin (Occupations for Retired Scholars), 173, 175
 Shen Yo (poet, +441 to +513), 353
 Shēng Hsüan Tzu (alchemist of uncertain date), 187, 188
 Shensi, burials in, 416
 Shensi Provincial Museum, Sian, 18
 Sheppard, H. J. (4), 375
 Sherlock, T. P. (1), 322
 Shi‘ah Muslims, 396
Shih (diviner's board, earliest magnetic compass), 291 (d), 464 (k)
Shih Chi (Historical Records), 239 (d), 336
Shih-chia-ho, vessels from, 26, 28
Shih chien, 180
Shih Ching (Book of Odes), 133 (f)
Shih Chou script, 446
Shih Liao Pén Tshao (Nutritional Therapy and Natural History), 136, 141
Shih nao ('stone brain'), 205–6
Shih phi ('stone spleen'), 188, 189
Shih Shēng-Han, 140
Shih Wu Pén Tshao (Nutritional Natural History), 136
Shih Yao Erh Ya (The Literary Expositor of Chemical Physic; or, Synonymic Dictionary of Minerals and Drugs), 2, 309 (c), 317 (c), 353, 356, 441
 Shinoda Osamu (I), 41
 Shipboard fresh water supplies, 98, 154
 Shipping, 332–3, 417 (b),
 cowled ventilators, 120 (b)
Shirghol (Mongol word for ant), 339
Shoseki Seirendo (On the Manufacture of Salt-petre), 193
 Shu (State), 159
Shu Ching (Historical Classic), 156, 343 (c)
Shuang hsiu. *See* 'Dual-cultivation'
Shui hai (cooling-water reservoir or condensing vessel), 7 (a), 35, 36, 37, 73

INDEX

747

- Shui kuan* (cooling-water tube or coil), 7 (a), 37
Shui ting (cooling-water vessel or receiver), 33–4,
 57
Shunyü I (eminent Early Han physician, —216
 to —147), 330
Shuo Wén (Analytical Dictionary of Characters),
 445, 446
Siam, 323
 strong variety of spirits from, 136, 145
Sian
 collapsible silver ladle from, 164
 stele at, 505
 stoppered aludel of silver from, 25
Sian Museum. *See* Shensi Provincial Museum
Siberia, Ouroboros motif in, 381
Siberian peoples. *See* Tribal peoples
Sicilian farmer, story of the, 495–6
Siddhi, 501
Side-tubes, 155
Sieben Defensiones (Paracelsus), 484 (d), 508 (d)
Sieves, 162
Siggel, A. (6), 463
Sighting-tube, 56 (c)
Silicates
 aqueous solutions of, 171
 melting of, 183
Silk, 332, 333 (e), 452
Silk floss, used for plugging bamboo tubes, 97
Silver, 33, 40, 135, 169, 177, 232, 234, 259, 260,
 261, 289, 290, 320, 357, 366, 387, 434, 441,
 469
 acceleration of maturation in the earth, 244
 acetate of, 318
 amalgamation with mercury, 317
 coins, 336, 337, 408
 colourings, 325
 converted by projection into yellow gold, 74
 covered with a gold veneer, 405
 deposits, 336–7
 dilution of, with copper, 402
 formation of, 363
 making of, 311, 350
 presence of, in ores of lead, 232, 233, 257–8,
 259
 ‘projection’ of, from base metal, 330, 391
 sal ammoniac and the detection of false silver,
 442
 solubilisation of, 174, 205
 transmuted into gold, 337, 394
Silver bottles, with stoppers, 25, 26
Silver ewer, 422
Silvering, 57, 358, 434
Similarities and Categories of the Five Substances
 among Metals and Minerals by the Deified
 Adept Yin. *See* *Yin Chen Chin Chin Shih*
 Wu Hsiang Lei
Simple Discourses on the Investigation of Things,
 See *Ko Wu Tshu Than*
Simulacra. *See* Automata
Sin, effects of, 492–3, 494
Sinhalese, 418
Sinkiang, 388, 409, 414, 423
 burials, 416
 manuscripts found in, 370 (g)
 source of sal ammoniac, 437, 438
Sinusoidal functions, 270, 275
Sirkap, excavations at, 86
Siva, 121 (b)
Sivin, Nathan (1), 1, 23, 269; (2), 14, 15
Siwa, oasis, 433
‘Six-and-one mud’ (lute), 163, 177, 219, 260
Six-fold classifications, 503 (b)
Sihe Six Metals, 458
Sixteen-fold Cyclically Transformed Gold Elixir
 prepared by the ‘Responding to the Chhi
 Method’. *See* *Kan Chhi Shih-liu Chuan Tan*
Sky-plate, 291
Sky-serpent. *See* Serpents
Slave-girls, cured by elixirs, 479
‘Slow Harry’ (automatic stoker), 94
Small Encyclopaedia of the Principles of Things.
 See *Wu Li Hsiao Shih*
Smelling-salts, 434
Smelting, 224, 246, 301
Smith, F. Porter (2), 192
Smithsonian Museum, Washington, 53
Snake-bite poisoning, 479–80
Snuff, 434 (h)
Soap-bean tree, 183
Soda, 179
Sodium, 179
 salts of, 183, 194
Sodium carbonate, 180, 181, 433
Sodium chloride, 180, 433
Sodium sulphate, 180, 181, 182, 187, 189, 190, 193
 purified form of, 183–4
 terms for, 181, 183
Sogdia, 333, 370, 409, 416, 422, 423, 439, 440,
 441, 444
Sogdian language, 444, 447
Soil of Paradise, 482
Soils, nitrate-containing, 192
Solar still. *See* Stills
Soldering, 441
Solfataras, 437, 438
Solinus, Gaius Julius (late + 3rd-century historian
 and geographer), 338
Solomon ben Judah ibn Gabiröl (Aviceborn,
 Spanish-Jewish philosopher, c. +1021 to
 c. +1058), 469
Solonchaks of Honan, 192
Solstices
 summer, 227
 winter, 222, 226
Solubilisation recipes, 170–1, 173–7, 201, 204–5
Solubilisation techniques, 21, 97, 155, 164–5,
 167–72, 186
Solution, 8, 9
 analyses, 193 (c)
‘Solve’, suggested as a translation of *hsiao*,
 equivalent to ‘nitre’, 181, 190
Soma (hallucinogenic plant of the Vedas), 324
Somadeva (Indian alchemist, +12th or +13th
 century), 104, 198

- Song of the Apostle Judas Thomas in the Land of the Indians, 377, 384
- Song of the Great Dragon and Tiger Enchymoma of the Perfected Master. See *Chih Chen Tzu Lung Hu Ta Tan Shih*
- Song of the Reaction-Vessel (Ting Chhi Ko, chapter of *Tshan Thung Chhi*, q.v.)
- Song of the Sevenfold Cyclically Transformed Cinnabar Elixir. See *Chhi Fan Ling Sha Ko*
- Songkhla, 145 (b)
- Sophic fire, 470 (k)
- Sorcery, 408
- Sores, 287, 483
- Sorites, 316 (a)
- Soror mystica*, 340
- Sotol* plant, 110
- Soul, immortality of, 493
- South Seas, 149
- Southeast Asia
- sublimation of camphor in, 49
- Southern Sung (dynasty), 294, 417
- Soxhlet continuous extraction apparatus, 76, 98, 101
- Soya-bean curd, 192
- Space, organisation of, 286 (d), 289
- Space travel, 154
- Spagyrical Natural History. See *Lu Huo Pén Tshao*
- Spain and the Spaniards, 201, 313, 388, 398, 448, 486, 494
- Arabic alchemy in, 401
 - and the origin of distillation in Central America, 109–10
 - philosophers, 405
 - translators, 403
- Spatial directions
- association of colours with, 360
 - and the viscera of the body, 503
- Spatial orientation, 286
- Species, fixity of, 234
- Specimen Beccherianum* (Stahl), 321 (b)
- Speculum Alchemiae* (Pseudo-Roger Bacon), 318 (c)
- Speculum Naturale* (Vincent of Beauvais), 338 (h)
- Speiser, E. A. (1), 82
- Spells, 221, 245, 342
- Spermaceti, 496
- Sphygmology, 423 (e)
- 'Spirit Chamber' (reaction-vessel), 292, 295, 296
- Spirits, 131, 135–6, 141, 151
- from fermented *mahuā* flowers, 106
 - from fermented mare's milk, 64, 103, 104, 105, 108
 - illicit, 105
- Spirits (supernatural beings). See Ghosts and spirits
- Spiritus salis urinae*, 434
- Spizel, Theophilus (sinologist, fl. +1660), 323
- Sponges
- and condensation from sea-water, 60, 61, 95
 - and cooling techniques, 90, 92, 127
- Spontaneous change, 461
- Spontaneous generation. See Generation
- Spoons
- iron, 163, 167
 - silver, 163, 167
- Spring Colours by the 'Tung-thing Lake. See *Tung-thing Chhun Sê Fu*
- Sri Indravarman III (King of Champa, r. c. +918 to +959), 158
- Ssu Fén Li (Quarter Day calendrical system), 222
- Ssu Shêng Pén Tshao (Materia Medica classified according to the Four Tones and Standard Rhymes), 440
- Ssuma Chhien (Early Han Historiographer-Royal, c. –145 to c. –85), 152, 336
- Stag, bone from, strange property of, 496
- Stahl, Georg Ernst (chemist and physician, +1660 to +1734), 321, 384, 455
- Stalactites and stalagmites, 201, 206, 288, 356 (a)
- Stannic sulphide, 356
- Stapleton, H. E., 389, 431, 434, 443, 447, 462; (4), 415
- Stapleton, H. E. & Azo, R. F., 83, 390 (g), 415
- Star anise oil, 118, 119
- The Star Manual. See *Hsing Ching*
- Stars, carbon-nitrogen cycle in, 384
- Statues
- speaking, 488
 - as the real abodes of gods and spirits, 488–9
- Steam distillation, 120, 130, 159
- Steam-engine, 54 (c)
- Steam heating, 32
- Steamers, 27 ff., 55 (e), 97, 118, 120, 132
- for cooking, 146
 - tomb-models of, 31
- Steaming, disinfection by, 315
- Steel, 243, 452
- rusting of, 315
- Steel-yard, 166
- Steele, R. & Singer, D. W. (1), 368
- Stein, Rolf (5), 221
- Stele inscriptions, 150, 335, 372, 505
- Stephanides, M. K. (3), 350
- Stephanus (supposed Byzantine teacher of Khālid, c. +665), 389
- Stephanus of Alexandria (proto-chemist, fl. +620), 327, 328, 329, 331–2, 344, 390
- Stern-post rudder, 141, 148
- Stills, 62–120, 148–51, 197, 200
- alchemical, 68–80
 - Alexandrian, 124, 125, 127
 - bamboo descensory, 57
 - Brazil, 115
 - 'Chinese', 30, 43, 61, 63, 64, 65, 66–8, 70, 71, 72, 74, 75, 76–7, 81, 95, 97, 98, 99, 101, 103, 104, 105, 106, 108, 110, 119, 121, 131, 388
 - cold-stills, 126, 133, 200
 - 'cold-finger' types, 35 (d), 100, 102
 - for desalination of sea-water, 61
 - for distillation of alcohol, 64, 66, 78, 105
 - East Asian types, 1, 37, 62–7, 69, 70, 76, 79, 80, 97, 98, 103, 107
 - Gandhāran, 80, 81, 86, 111, 121, 131, 132, 155

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

INDEX

749

- Stills (*cont.*)
 Hellenistic, 30, 72, 81, 86, 88, 89, 98, 105, 107, 113, 124, 125, 127, 140
 'hot-finger', 102 (c)
 Indian, 80, 104, 111, 112–13, 121
 Japanese, 46, 47, 114, 116, 117
 mercury, 77–8, 88, 164
 Mesopotamian, 82
 Mexican, 106, 107, 108, 109, 110
 micro-, 102
 modern, for the purification of mercury, 53, 54
 molecular, 76, 99, 101, 102
 Mongolian, 62, 64, 67, 70, 71, 73, 74, 76, 81, 95, 97, 98, 99, 101, 103, 106, 108, 110, 111, 121, 133, 155
 Moroccan, 115
 'perfume'-, 54, 129
 'pot and gun-barrel', 113
qatāra, 130
 retort type, 79, 81, 86, 87, 88, 103, 104, 121, 127, 131, 200
 solar, 99
 Tantric, 105
 transitional forms between Eastern and Western types, 120
 with two side-tubes, 285
 vat-, 150, 151
 Vietnamese, 117 (a), 118, 119
 water-cooled, 155, 157, 285
 Western types, 80, 82, 86, 88, 89, 98, 105, 119, 155
 Stimulus diffusion, 388
 Stimulus-response reaction, 230, 308
 Stisser, Johann Andreas (chemist, fl. c. +1660 to c. +1695), 202
 Stoic philosophy, 227, 253
 Stone-swallows, 450
 Stones, 450
 elixir-, 450
 'laughing-mad', 449
 'pregnant', 364
 of two sexes, 363, 450
 Storax, 159
 Stovarsol, 192
 Stove platform. See *Tham*
 Stoves, 11–16
 in Chinese museums, 13
 funerary, 30
 pottery, 13, 14
 sublimatory, 47
 tomb-models of, 11 (e), 31
 Strabo (geographer, –63 to +19), 338
 Strange Stories from I-Chien. See *I Chien Chih*
 Strange Things Noted in the South. See *Ling Piao Lu I*
 Strauss, Bettina, 399 (d)
 Strickmann, Michel, 214; (2), 219
 String of Pearls on the Spring and Autumn Annals. See *Chhun Chhiu Fan Lu*
 Strokes 'making all the difference', 444 (f)
 Stromata (Clement of Alexandria), 343 (b), 346 (i)
 The Strong, overcome by the weak, 470
 A Study of the 'Kinship of the Three'. See *Tshan Thung Chhi Khao I*
 Stuhlmann, C. C. (1), 180
 Styptic preparations, 473
 Su Chhē. See Su Ying-Pin
 Su Ching (high official and pharmaceutical naturalist, fl. +659), 186, 206, 235, 241, 296, 302
 Su Lin (Han adept, d. c. –60), 331
 Su Lo (Han magician-technician, fl. +10), 331
 Su Nü (The Immaculate Girl), 364 (g)
 Su Shih. See Su Tung-Pho
 Su Sung (high official, astronomer and engineer, +1020 to +1101), 58, 186, 208, 442
 Su Tsung (Thang emperor, r. +756 to +762), 416
 Su Tung-Pho (poet and scholar, +1036 to +1101), 145, 203, 310
 Su Ying-Pin (scholar and writer, brother of Su Tung-Pho, +1039 to +1112), 203
 Su Yuan-Lang. See Su Yuan-Ming
 Su Yuan-Ming (alchemist, +3rd and +4th centuries), 2, 259 (e), 293 (f), 390
 Subdued Cinnabar, 263
 'Subduing' (*fu*), 250, 256, 262, 453
 Sublimation, 8, 9, 22, 33, 134, 135, 256, 361
 of ammonium chloride, 432
 apparatus, 44–55
 of chlorides of mercury, 318
 and distillation, 47, 48, 69
 from dung soot, 433, 436
 'Submarine mare', 121 (b)
 Substances
 chemical properties of, 396
 composition of, 393, 394
 identification of, 193–4
 inorganic. See Inorganic substances
 organic. See Organic substances
 'similar category'-, 317, 322
 volatile, 395, 434, 470
 See also Chemical substances
 Substantial change, theories of, 298
 Sucrose, molecular distillation of, 102
 Sūfis, 397, 424, 425 (h), 501
 Sugar and sugar-cane, 111, 417 (g)
 Sui (dynasty), 189, 206, 420
Sui Shu (History of the Sui Dynasty), 440
 Suidas (Byzantine grammarian and lexicographer, fl. c. +940 to +980), 328, 340
 Sulaimān (Umayyad ambassador to China, +726), 417
 Sulaimān al-Tājir ('the merchant', +851), 417
 Sulphates, 175, 180, 204
 aqueous solutions of, 171
 ferric, 173
 Sulphide ore, 79
 Sulphides, 176, 204
 solubilisation of, 170, 177
 Sulphur, 40, 172, 174, 175, 176, 262, 263, 291, 320, 375, 434, 454–5, 470
 combustion of, 195
 oxidation of, by nitric acid, 384
 solubilisation of, 170, 178

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

750

INDEX

- Sulphur and mercury. *See* Mercury and sulphur
 Sulphur dioxide, 55
 Sulphur waters, 175
 Sulphuric acid, 178, 195, 196, 199
 Sulphurous vapours, and the treatment of base metals, 358
 'Sulphurous' water, 367
 Sumerian medicine, 300
 Sumitomo Collection (Kyoto), 32, 33
Summa Perfectionis Magisterii (Geber, c. +1290), 9, 55 (e), 83, 178 (a)
 Sun, 230
 annual motion of, 286
 prognostication by, 342
 shadow-length, 270
 worship of, 427–8
 Sun Fēng-I, 311
 The Sun-Rays Master's Pharmaceutical Natural History . . . *See Jih Hua (Tzu) Chu Chia Pén Tshao*
 Sun Ssu-Mo (alchemist, physician and writer, +581 to +682), 15–16, 23, 47, 162, 186, 331, 390, 441, 491
 Sun Yu-Yüeh (+5th-century Taoist), 215
Sunbādhaj sand, 449
Sūnda, 131
Sūnda-yantra, 131
 Sundial, 167
Sundika, 131
Sundin, 131
 Sung (dynasty), 145, 160, 175, 203, 208, 212, 231, 422, 445, 468
 alchemy, 69, 240, 242, 257
 alchemical apparatus, 11, 34, 72, 162
 alchemical books, 35, 197, 250
 distillation of alcohol, 141–51
 imperial collections, 51
 reaction vessels, 22, 53–4
Sung Shih (History of the Sung Dynasty), 169, 203
 Sung Ying-Hsing (encyclopaedist of technology, +1637), 66
 Sung Yün (Buddhist pilgrim, c. +518), 354
 Superior Purity Heaven, 214
 Supplementary Amplifications of the Great Pharmacopoeia. *See Pén Tshao Kang Mu Shih I*
 Supplementary Elixir Instructions of the Company of the Realised Immortals; a Ling-Pao Scripture. *See Ling-Pao Chung Chen Tan Chiēh*
 'Supplementary Instructions to the Yellow Emperor's Nine-cauldron Spiritual Elixir Canon', 247
 Supreme Intelligence, in European and Chinese thought, 227
 Supreme-Pole Arcane Chih, 217
 Supreme-Pole Perfected (or Realised) Immortal, 218
Surā, 131
 Surface-enrichment, of gold-containing alloys, 353, 402
 Surface-films and layers, 335, 358
 Surface tension, 245
 Survey of Pathology. *See Byogaku Tsūron*
 Susa, 333
 Elamite necropolis at, 376
 Susiana, 333, 409, 410 (c)
 'Suspended needle aludel', 19 (a)
Suśruta Samhīta, 429 (d)
 Suter, H., 463
 Swallows, 314
 Sweat, distillation of, 434
 Sweet-flag, 452
 Sydenham, Thomas (physician and pathologist, +1624 to +1689), 497 (c)
 Sylvius, Franciscus (physician and chemist, +1614 to +1672), 455
 Symbolic correlations, 247 (c), 306, 360, 373, 427–8, 503
 Sympathetic magic. *See Magic*
 Sympathies and antipathies, 311, 312, 313–14, 316, 325, 326, 334, 392, 393, 395, 409, 470–1, 503
 Symposia, 399 ff.
 Syncellus, Georgius (Byzantine historian, late +8th century, d. after +810), 327, 339, 341
 Synchronicity, 308 (d)
 Synesius (late +4th-century proto-chemical writer), 75, 325, 327, 357, 370
 Synonymic Materia Medica with Japanese Equivalents. *See Honzō-Wamyō*
Syntagma (Libavius), 202 (c), 434 (c)
 Syria and the Syrians, 126, 329, 336, 397, 409, 426, 448, 450
 Christians in, 410
 Syriac alchemy, 11
 Syriac culture, 470
 Syriac encyclopaedia, 447
 Syriac language, 351, 411
 translations from Greek into, 410
 Syriac learning, 410
 Syriac MSS, 87–8, 436
 Syriac proto-chemical literature, 311, 313
 Syriac texts, 11, 33, 415, 473
 Szechuan, 191, 192, 249, 421
 brine deposits in, 193
 Szechuan Provincial Museum, Chungking, 163
 Ta-Chhin, 336
Ta Huan Tan Chhi Pi Thu (Esoteric Illustrations of the Concordance of the Great Regenerative Enchymoma), 268 (b)
 Ta Ming (pharmaceutical naturalist, fl. +972), 200
Ta Ming I Thung Chih (Comprehensive Geography of the Ming Empire), 438 (a, d)
Ta Tai Li Chi (Record of Rites of the elder Tai), 463
Ta Tan Chi (Record of the Great Enchymoma), 257 (c)
Ta Tan Wén Ta (Questions and Answers on the Great Elixir), 265 (c)
Tan Tao Mi Chih (Secrets of the Great Tao), 227

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

INDEX

751

- Ta-Tung Lien Chen Pao Ching, Chiu Huan Chin*
Tan Miao Chüeh (Mysterious Teachings on the Ninefold Cyclically Transformed Gold Elixir . . .), 2, 262, 273 (b)
- Ta-Tung Lien Chen Pao Ching Hsiu Fu Ling Sha Miao Chüeh* (Mysterious Teachings on the Alchemical Preparation of Numinous Cinnabar, Supplementary to the Perfected Treasure Manual, a Ta-Tung Scripture), 237, 262 (e), 271 (c), 300
- Ta'álím al-Handasa* (Teachings of Geometry), 487 (c)
- al-Tabarī
See 'Ali ibn Sahl Rabbān al-Tabarī and Abū Ja'far Muḥ. ibn Jarīr al-Tabarī
- Tabaristan, 406, 408, 420 (a)
- Tabasheer, 326 (b)
- Tabula Chémica*, 335, 373 (g), 401
- Tabula Smaragdina*, 335, 368 ff., 412
 possible Chinese original of, 370–2
- Tabus, 221, 246
- Tachenius, Otto (pharmaceutical chemist, c. +1620 to +1699 or later), 433 (j), 455
- Tacitus, reconstruction of a German theodicy from, 372 (a)
- Tagar I culture (—8th to —6th centuries), 381
- Tail-eaters. *See* Ouroboros symbol
- Takada Tadasuke, 51
- Taklamakan Desert, 422
- Takwin* (generation of things from their elements), 495
- Talas River. *See* Battle of the Talas River
- Talc, 177, 288, 315
- Tales of the Four Lords of Liang. *See* *Liang Ssu Kung Chi*
- Talisman of al-Hākim on the Science of the Exalted Work. *See* *Ta'widh al-Hākim bi-'amr 'llāh . . .*
- Talismans, 296 (h), 313, 358, 375, 376
 astrological, 426
 childbirth, 205
 'lustrous cinnabar' as, 241
- Taoist, 465
See also Charms
- Talking head, 427 (c)
- al-Tamimi. *See* Ibn Umail . . .
- Tan* (cinnabar, elixir), 45, 262, 480, 489
- Tan Ching Yao Chieh*. *See* *Thai-Chhing Tan Ching Yao Chieh*
- Tan Fang Chien Yuan* (Original Mirror of Alchemical Preparations), 441
- Tan Fang Ching Yuan* (Mirror of the Alchemical Elaboratory), 184, 190, 441, 442
- Tan Fang Hsii Chih* (Indispensable Knowledge for the Chymical Elaboratory), 2, 11, 69, 77, 163, 233, 272 (a), 285, 289, 293 (f)
- Tan lu* (elixir stove), 12
- Tan Lun Chieh Chih Hsin Ching* (Mental Mirror Reflecting the Essentials of Oral Instruction about the Discourses on the Elixir and the Enchymoma), 231, 232 (e), 233, 240 (f), 253, 264
- Tan Yao Pi Chieh* (Confidential Oral Instructions on Elixirs and Drugs), 60
- Tan phi* (elixir embryo, i.e. the ingredients), 35
- Tan-sha shui* (aqueous solution of cinnabar), 170
- Tannin, 205, 299
- Tannu-Tuva, 104, 105
- Tantalus (supposed teacher of a King in India), 495
- Tantric alchemical literature, 104, 132
- Tantric period (+6th-century onwards), 131
- Tantric saints, 414
- Tantric-type stills. *See* Still
- Tao, 121, 211, 221, 223, 234, 235, 244, 245, 247, 250, 268, 359, 364, 371, 379–80
 recurrent pattern of, 236, 262
- Tao Fa Hui Yuan* (Liturgical and Apotropaic Encyclopaedia of Taoism), 465, 466
- Tao Té Ching* (Canon of the Virtue of the Tao), 254 (d), 359, 379
- Tao Tsang* (Taoist Patrology), 1, 67, 169, 215, 218, 220, 291, 332, 336, 392, 421
 distillation apparatus depicted in, 77
- Taoism and Taoists, 155, 166, 188, 191, 286, 323, 329, 354, 372, 378, 387, 465, 468, 470, 496, 501, 507
 alchemy and, 1, 21, 71, 184, 210–11, 212–13, 220, 243, 245, 246, 255, 268, 476, 490, 508
hu merchants and, 419, 420
 magic squares, 465, 468, 469
 mystical, scientific and political tendencies of, 397
 and the problem of change, 379
 purple colour and, 356
 revival of, 214
 rituals, 211, 289
 social connections of, 219–20
 Southern School of, 211–12, 319
 talismans, 465
 and union with the cosmic order, 211
 women and, 364
- Taoist abbeys, 220
- Taoist Patrology. *See* *Tao Tsang*
- Tapputī-Bēlātēkallim, 83 (a), 364 (h)
- Tarasco Indians. *See* Tribal peoples
- Ta'rikh Sini Mulük al-Ard wa'l-Anbiya'* (Chronology of the Kings and Prophets of the Earth), 426 (d), 476 (a)
- Tarim Basin, 422
- Tartars. *See* Tribal peoples
- Tartary fox, 339
- Tashkent, 416, 422, 439
- Taslimi, M. (1), 404
- Tauhīr (fictive King of India), 412 (d)
- Ta'widh al-Hākim bi-'amri 'llāh fi 'Ibm al-San'a al-āliya* (Talisman of al-Hākim (Fatimid Caliph, r. +996 to +1020) on the Science of the Exalted Work), 391 (a), 436 (e), 481
- Taxation, 147
- Taxila, 90
 distillation equipment found at, 85–7
- Taxonomy, Chinese and Aristotelian contrasted, 277

752

INDEX

- Taylor, Sherwood, 75; (2) 90; (5) 80, 88, 89, 95, 126
 Tea, 14, 452
 Teachings of Geometry. See *Ta'âlim al-Handasa*
 Technical interchange. See Transmissions
 Technical Methods of the Adept (Ko) Chih-Chhuan with Critical Annotations. See *Chih-Chhuan Chen-Jen Chiao Chêng Shu*
 Technical terms
 alchemical and chemical, 4–9, 35–6, 68, 70–1, 79, 190, 380
 astronomy, 381, 384
 baths of acetic acid and potassium nitrate, 5 (a), 21, 171
 catch-bowl, 146
 crystalline ferrous sulphate, 199
 cyclical processes, 453
 distillation, 58, 62, 97, 132–3, 144
 distilled spirits, 142
 distilled water, 62
 elixir ingredients, 35
 embryology, 366–7
 fermentation, 366
 fire-phasing, 266
 Greek chemical terms, 58
 heating apparatus, 11
 iatro-chemistry, 190
 liquor still, 105
 minerals and metals, 356
 natron, 180
 projection, 9, 357
 ‘resistance to fire’ concept, 453
 sal ammoniac, 432, 433, 435, 439, 440, 441, 443–8
 salt, 180
 saltpetre, 184 ff., 192–3, 432
 ‘seminal essence’, 229
 side-tubes of stills, 144
 sodium sulphate, 181, 183
 ‘subduing’, 250, 256, 262, 453
 transmutation, 357
 yeast, 351
 ‘Techniques of the Emperor Justinian’, 367
 Technology, and technicians, 221, 311, 328–9, 354, 508
 Egyptian, 349
 Teeth, of the Indian sages, particularly good, 497 (f)
 Temkin, O. (3), 490–1
 Temperature control, 14–15, 33, 36, 37, 39, 41, 247–8, 266
 measurement, 266
 Temple, Sir William (diplomat and scholar, +1628 to +1699), 502
 Temples, 67
 of Amûn-Ra, 433
 Sâbîan, 427
 Ming Thang, 462, 464
 Wan-fo-hsia, Buddhist cave-temples, 66, 67
 Ten Books of the Opinions of Balinâs, Lord of Talismans. See ‘Asara Kutub ‘alâ Ra’y Balinâs Sâhib al-Tilasmât
- Ten Thousand Infallible Arts of the Prince of Huai-Nan. See *Huai Nan Wan Pi Shu*
Têng (reaction-vessel), 25, 51
Têng Chen Yin Chiüeh (Confidential Instructions for the Ascent to Immortality), 216, 218
 Tepe Gawra, Iraq still from, 82
Tequesquite, 181 (f)
Tequila, 108 (a)
 Terminology. See Technical terms
Terra pinguis ('fatty earth'), 455
 ‘Test-tube babies’, 487
 Tests. See Experimentation
Tetrabiblos (Ptolemy), 312 (d), 360 (g)
 Tetragrams, 472
 Tetrasaccharides, molecular distillation of, 102
Tetrasomia, 375
Le Texte d’Alchymie, et le Songe-Verd (Anonymous, +1695), 318 (c)
 Textile dyeing, 325
Tha kang pu tou ('treading the *kang* and stepping the *tou*'), 468
 al-Thâ'âlibi
 See Abû Mansûr . . .
 Ibn Muâammad . . .
 Thâbit ibn Qurra al-Harrânî (translator, +826 to +901), 411, 463
Thai-Chhing Chin I Shen Chhi Ching (Manual of the Numinous Chhi of Potable Gold; a Thai-Chhing Scripture), 256 (a), 269 (b)
Thai-Chhing Chin I Shen Tan Ching (Manual of the Potable Gold (or Metallous Fluid) and the Magical Elixir (or Enchymoma); a Thai-Chhing Scripture), 177, 245 (a), 258 (c)
Thai-Chhing Chung Ching (Thai-Chhing Median Canon), 219
Thai-Chhing Shih Pi Chi (Records of the Rock Chamber), 2, 22, 182 (c), 183, 188 (h), 287
Thai-Chhing Tan Ching Yao Chiüeh (Essentials of the Elixir Manuals for Oral Transmission . . .), 23 (e), 441
Thai-Chi Chen-Jen Chiu Chuan Huan Tan Ching Yao Chiüeh (Essential Teachings of the Manual of the Supreme-Pole Adept on the Nine-fold Cyclically Transformed Elixir), 269 (c)
Thai-Chi Chen-Jen Tsa Tan Yao Fang (Tractate of the Supreme-Pole Adept on Miscellaneous Elixir Recipes), 3, 13, 19
Thai Chi Thu, 503 (n)
Thai Hsüan Ching (Manual of the Great Mystery), 472
 Thai I (pole-star sky-god), 465, 466, 467, 468
Thai i lu (stove), 12
Thai I shen lu (magical vessel of the Great Unity), 17
Thai Ku Thu Tui Ching (Most Ancient Canon of the Joy of the Earth), 250
Thai-Phing Huan Yü Chi (General Description of the World in the Thai-Phing reign-period), 158 (b), 441, 446
Thai-Phing Kuang Chi (Miscellaneous Records collected in the Thai-Phing reign-period), 140 (e), 143 (c), 419

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

INDEX

753

- Thai-Phing Yü Lan* (Thai-Phing reign-period Imperial Encyclopaedia), 139, 202 (h), 315 (a)
- Thai-Shang Chu Kuo Chiu Min Tsung Chen Pi Yao* (Arcane Essentials of the Mainstream of Taoism, for the Help of the Nation and the Saving of the People; a Thai-Shang Scripture), 465, 467, 468
- Thai-Shang Pa-Ching Ssu-Jui Tzu-Chiang (Wu-Chu) Chiang-Shêng Shen Tan Fang* (Method for Making the Eight-Radiances Four-Stamens Purple-fluid (Five-Pearl) Incarnate Numinous Elixir, a Thai-Shang Scripture), 216, 270 (a)
- Thai-Shang Wei Ling Shen Hua Chiu Chuan Huan Tan Sha Fa* (Methods of the Guardian of the Mysteries for the Marvelous Thaumaturgical Transmutation of Ninefold Cyclically Transformed Cinnabar), 2, 261 (d)
- Thai Tsung (Thang emperor, r. +627 to +649), 197
- Thai Tsung (Sung emperor, r. +976 to +997), 419
- Thai-Wei Ling Shu Tzu-Wén Lang-Kan Hua Tan Shen Chen Shang Ching* (Divinely Written Exalted Spiritual Realisation Manual in Purple Script on the Lang-Kan (Gem) Radiant Elixir; a Thai-Wei Scripture), 217 (b), 269 (a), 279 (c)
- Thaiwan, sublimatory apparatus used in, 45, 47
- Thaiyuan, 141
- Thaiyuan Museum. *See* Shansi Provincial Historical Museum
- Thales of Miletus (Pre-Socratic philosopher, —6th century), 60
- Thalj al-Sin* ('Chinese snow', i.e. saltpetre), 194
- Thallium, 475 (d)
- Than (stove platform), 10–11
in Syriac alchemical texts, 11
- Thang (period), 44, 72, 78, 175, 196, 197, 310, 389, 417, 418–19, 420, 445
alchemy, 69, 240, 250, 268, 293, 381
destillatio per descensum, 55
distillation, 133, 141–51, 149, 157
and the magic square, 468
poets, 142, 149
pottery stoves, 14
still, 148
- Thang Kung-Fang (name of a Chhin adept and elixir-maker, also of a Hsin adept and minor official), 330
- Thang Yü Lin* (Miscellanea of the Thang Dynasty), 15
- Thao Hung-Ching (Taoist physician, alchemist and pharmaceutical naturalist, +456 to +536), 47, 155, 168, 169, 185, 186, 189, 203, 206, 208, 213, 214–16, 218–20, 235, 268, 269, 331, 336, 390, 440, 441, 447, 491
- Thao Ku (scholar and writer, +903 to +970), 159
- Thaufil al-Rūmī. *See* Theophilus of Edessa
- Thaumaturgic priests, 124
- Theatrum Chemicum Britannicum* (Ashmole), 248 (a)
- Thebeus Scholasticus (traveller, +4th century), 498 (c)
- Theodora (Byzantine empress, r. +1055 to +1056), 500–1
- Theodoreetus, 476
- Theodorus (fictive Byzantine emperor), 413
- Theodosiopolis, 410
- Theology, 392, 393, 396
- Theon of Smyrna (mathematician and astronomer, fl. c. +130), 463
- Theophilus of Edessa (astrologer and translator, d. +785), 410 (a)
- Theophilus Presbyter (monk and craftsman, fl. c. +1125), 328
- Theophrastes (Byzantine alchemical poet, +7th century), 327, 491
- Theophrastus (botanist and agriculturist, d. —287), 174, 179 (d), 325, 363, 449
- Theosebeia (sister of Zosimus, +3rd century), 340–1, 364
- Therapy, 507
See also Remedies
- Thermobacterium mobile*, 108 (a)
- Thermometer, 266
- Thermostatic control. *See* Temperature control
- Thesaurus Euonymus Philiatri* (Gesner), 60 (h), 61
- Thesaurus of Popular Terms, Ideas and Customs.
See *Thung Su Pien*
- Theurgy, 334
- Thi-ang* (whey), 139
- Thi chiu* (red wine), 139 (g)
- Thi hu* (ghee), 139 (g)
- Thiao-Chih. *See* Mesopotamia
- Thieh chhi* (container made of iron), 167
- Thieh ting* (iron vessel), 16
- Thieh Wei Shan Tshung Than* (Collected Conversations at Iron-Fence Mountain), 160
- Thien Hsi (scholar interested in fermentations, c. +990), 144–5
- Thien Kung Khai Wu* (Exploitation of the Works of Nature), 57 (d), 66, 78, 79, 162, 192, 204, 241 (f), 298
- Thien Shan, 140, 155, 422, 426, 432, 437, 438, 441
- Thien-shêng huang ya kuei* (natural yellow sprout casing), 19
- Thien wén* (astronomy, 'the forms exhibited in the sky'), 291, 292
- Things Seen and Heard on my Official Travels.
See *Yu Huan Chi Wén*
- Things Seen and Heard in the Western Countries.
See *Hsi Yü Wén Chien Lu*
- Third Book of the Elements of the Foundation.
See *Kitāb al-Ustuqus al-Uss al-Thālith*
- The 'Third Master'. *See* Ibn Sīnā . . .
- The 'Thirty Words'. *See* *Kitāb al-Idāh al-Mā'ruf* . . .
- Thirty-Six Methods for Bringing Solids into Aqueous Solution. *See* *San-shih-liu Shui Fa*

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

754

INDEX

- Thirty-Six Methods for the Bringing of Substances into Aqueous Solution [by means of] Transformations caused by Nitre . . . See *Fu Yün-Mu Chu Shih Yao Hsiao Hua San-shih-liu Shui Fa*
- Thirty-Six Methods for Transforming Solids and bringing them into Aqueous Solution. See *Lien San-shih-liu Shui Fa*
- Thölde, Johann ('Basil Valentine', fl. c. +1570 to c. +1615), 196 (d), 199, 202, 318 (c)
- St Thomas the Apostle of the Indies, 383, 384
- Thomson, T., 369
- Thorndike, Lynn (1), 240
- Thou Huang Tsa Lu* (Miscellaneous Jottings far from Home), 143
- A Thousand Golden Remedies. See *Chhien Chin Yao Fang*
- Three or four foci of development
of distillation, 107 (b)
of proto-chemistry, 504
- The Three Hermes, 412 (e)
- The Three Lords Mao (brothers), 213 (b)
- The Three Yellow Minerals, 291
- Thu Ching Yen I Pén Tshao* (Illustrations and Commentary for the 'Dilations upon Pharmaceutical Natural History'), 187 (c)
- Thu Hsiu Chen Chün Pén Tshao* (Pharmaceutical Natural History of the Earth's Mansions Immortal). See *Tsao Hua Chih Nan*
- Thu Shu Chi Chhêng* (the Great Encyclopaedia), 307
- Thu ting* (pottery vessel), 16
- 'Thunder-axes', 356 (a), 362 (d)
- Thung Chih* (Historical Collections), 169, 309 (a)
- Thung Hsüan Pi Shu* (The Secret Art of Penetrating the Mystery), 3
- Thung lei* (substances of the) same category, 307 (d), 316, 360, 366 (g)
- Thung Lei Hsiang Tung* ('Things of the Same Genus Energise Each Other', a chapter of the *Chun Chhiu Fan Lu*, q.v.)
- Thung Shih-Hêng (l), 407
- Thung Su Pien* (Thesaurus of Popular Terms, Ideas and Customs), 142 (c)
- Thung ting* (copper vessel), 16
- Thung Yu Chieh* (Lectures on the Understanding of the Obscurity of Nature), 232 (e), 235 (f), 292 (g)
- Ti li* (geography, 'the lay of the land'), 291
- Tiao* (whale), 198
- Tiao thêng chiu* ('hooked vine wine'), 146
- Tibet, and the Tibetans, 414, 418
folklore, 338
mining, 339
- Tibetan nomads. See Tribal peoples
- Tien hua* (projection), 9
- Tien Shu* (Book of Arts), 235 (b)
- Tiger, in the cosmological tradition, 252
- Tiger-dragon resonances, 315
- Tigris river, 410
- Timaeus* (Plato), 360, 462
- Time, 211, 221–3
- in Hellenistic proto-chemistry and in Chinese alchemy, 361–2, 388
and mineral and metal growth, 231–6, 243, 362
See also Correspondences, in duration
'Time-controlling substances', 243–4
- Time-keeping devices, 167
- Time-scale of perfection, 243
- Timgad (Algeria), 130
- Timing, and alchemical processes, 167, 247, 487
and liturgies involving religious statues, 489
- Tin, 177, 199, 294, 295, 313, 320, 337, 356, 358, 469
alloys of. *See Alloys*
amalgamation with mercury, 317
chlorides of, 402, 440
sulphide, 177
- Ting* (reaction-vessel), 10, 12, 16–18, 25, 27, 29, 33, 51
- Tingeing 295, 325, 402
- Tinning, 434
- Tinting, 325
- Tiryakpâlana-yantra* (Indian still), 70 (b), 104
- de Tizac, Ardenne (1), 25, 27
- Tobacco water-pipe, 165, 166
- Tobler, A. J. (1), 82
- Toddy, 106, 145
- Tokharestan, 407, 420 (a), 423
- Tomb-models
Han ship, 148
stoves, 11 (e), 31, 148
- Tombs
Chao-ku, 29
Chhangsha, 51, 53
Han, 31, 465
of Liu Shêng, 21, 54, 55
of Marquis of Tshai, 24
of Sa'd ibn abi-Waqqâs, 416
Scythian, 381
Thang, 14
Western Chin dynasty, 30
Wu Liang, 465
Yang-tzu Shan, 163
- Tonics, 260
- Tooth-powder, 449
- Tortoise-shaped combustion-chamber, 291
- Tortoise-shell, 332
- Tou, Empress Dowager (imperial concubine of Han Wén Ti, r. —179 to —157), 55
- Tou-chi-thai, 'hot-plate' from, 15
- Tou Phing (Sung writer on wine, +1020), 147
- Tou Wan (Princess, wife of Liu Shêng, Prince of Chung-shan, c. —113), 55
- Tourmaline, 363
- Toxic compositions, in military incendiaries, 430 (f)
- Toxicology, 453 (d)
- Tractate on the Chinese Arrow-head Metal. *See Kitâb al-Khârsîni*
- Tractate on the Fontanelles of the Skull. *See Lu Hsing Ching*
- Tractate on Iron. *See Kitâb al-Ihadid*

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

INDEX

755

- T**ractate of the Supreme-Pole Adept on Miscellaneous Elixir Recipes. *See Thai-Chi Chen-jen Tsa Tan Yao Fang*
- Trade, 333, 421, 440, 452
Arab-Chinese, 417
related to physiological alchemy, 419–20
- Trade-routes, 370, 417, 418
- Traité des Sels* (Stahl), 321 (b)
- Transformations, 229, 234 (e), 261, 298, 306, 309, 316, 374. *See also* Metamorphoses
- Translations, 491
from Arabic into Latin, 328, 398, 402, 403, 491, 494
from Arabic into Greek, 501
from Chinese into Arabic, 415
from Greek into Syriac, 410
from Syriac into Arabic, 411
- Transliteration, Chinese, of Arabic geographical names, 423
- Transmission of elixir formulae through series of celestial divinities, 218–19
- Transmissions. *See* Cultural contacts
- Transmutation, 380, 402, 409
agents of, 221, 394
of base metals, 304, 487
by elixirs, 402, 472
purple colour and, 356
of silver into gold, 337
technical terms, 357
- Transoxiana, 416, 425
- Travellers
and the exchange of ideas, 332–3, 354, 425–6
talismans for, 449
- Treasure of Euonymus*. *See Schatz Euonymi*
- 'Treatise of Jāmās' (Jāmāsp) for Ardashir the King on the Hidden Secret', 415
- Treatise on Horsemanship and Stratagems of War. *See Kitāb al-Furūsiya wa'l-Munāṣab al-Harbiya*
- 'Treatise on the Mechanical Causes of Chemical Precipitation' (Boyle), 202
- Treatise on Wine. *See Chiu Phu*
- Treatises on Harmonics and Calendrical Astronomy (*lù li chih*) in the dynastic histories, 222
- Tria Prima*, 455
- Tribal peoples
Anyanya, 111
Baiga, 105
Baschkirs, 103 (f)
Bhils, 106
of Bihar, 97
Chenchu jungle, 105
of China, 146
Cora (Amerindians), 108
Huichol (Amerindians), 108–9, 110
Kalmuks, 103 (f)
Kirghiz, 103 (f)
Newara, 106
Ostjaks, 111
Sagai Turks, 103 (d)
Siberian, 105, 112
Tarasco (Amerindians), 106, 107
- Tartars, 103 (f), 442
- Tibetan nomads, 104
- Tungus, 104, 105
- Turkic, 423, 442
- Western Chiang, 185
- Wotjaks, 111, 112
- Tribikos* (Hellenistic still with three side-tubes), 72 (d)
- Tribute, 151, 161
sal ammoniac as, 440
- Tricarboxylic acid cycle, 384
- Tricksters, 414 (f)
- 'Trifid' vessels of Mesoamerica, 110 (b)
- Trigault, Nicholas (Jesuit, +1577 to +1628), 505 (b)
- Trigrams, 210, 223, 250, 251 (c), 267–8, 271, 278, 289, 361, 388, 471
- Trinity, Taoist, 377 (a)
- Trinity College, Cambridge, 455 (g)
- 'Tripartite Catalogue of (Taoist) Scriptures', 215 (a)
- Triple Concordance calendar system. *See San Thung Li*
- Triple Ouroboroi, 379 (d)
- Triplōsis*, 365
- Tripod cauldrons, 16, 18, 25, 27, 28
- Tripod pyxes, 24–5
- Triumphant Visions of the Ocean Shores. *See Ying Yai Shēng Lan*
- Trona*, 180 (f)
- Trough-and-box sublimation system, 47, 49
- True and Essential Teachings about the Great Magical Cinnabar of the Jade Heaven. *See Yü Tung Ta Shen Tan Sha Chen Yao Chüeh*
- 'True' Lead and Mercury, 254 (a)
- 'True Man', 371 (a)
- Tsan-Ning (monk and scientific writer, +919 to +1001), 208, 310, 314, 315
- Tsao* (stove, or combustion-chamber), 11, 12, 13
- Tsao Fu (legendary charioteer), 413
- Tsao-Hua Chih Nan* (Guide to the Creation), 184 (e), 362 (f)
- Tsēng* (steamer), 25, 27–8, 29, 30, 33, 34, 81, 97, 132
- Tsēng chhi shui* (distilled water), 62
- Tsēng Hsi-Shu* (I), 446
- Tshai, Marquis of
tomb of (c. —465), 24
- Tshai Thao (Confucian scholar and writer, c. +1115), 160
- Tshan Thung Chhi* (The Kinship of the Three), 16, 218, 248, 249–50, 251, 253, 254, 255, 257, 258, 259, 265, 267–8, 270, 271, 275, 279, 285, 316, 331, 362 (f), 366 (g), 439, 445, 446
- Tshan Thung Chhi Khao I* (A Study of the Kinship of the Three), 251 (c)
- Tshan Thung Chhi Wu Hsiang Lei Pi Yao* (Arcane Essentials of the Fivefold Categorisation based on the 'Kinship of the Three'), 309, 314, 316, 317–18, 319, 320, 322
- Tshan Thung Lu* (Records of the Kinship of the Three), 11

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

756

INDEX

- Tshao* (gutter, conduit or flume), 144
Tshao fang (distillery), 144
Tshao Mu Tzu (Book of the Fading-like-Grass Master), 137, 140, 151
Tshao Phei. *See Wei Wén Ti*
Tshao Thien-Chhin, Ho Ping-Yü & Needham, (1) 167, 171, 176
Tshao Yuan-Yü, 146; (1), 68, 70, 290; (2, 3), 133
Tshui Fang (iatro-chemist and naturalist, fl. c. +1045), 189
Tshui Shih (Governor of Liaotung, +2nd century), 134
Tshui Tun-Li (Minister of War, +648), 197
Tshun Fu Chai Wén Chi (Literary Collection of the Preservation-and-Return Studio), 337
Tso Tzhu (magician and alchemist in Han, +155 to +220), 218
Tsou Yen (natural philosopher, —350 to —270), 57, 312, 329, 360, 380, 387, 464, 508
Tsun Shéng Pa Chien (Eight Disquisitions on putting oneself in accord with the Life-Force), 140 (a)
Tu (poison; or, active principle), 484
Tu Tzu-Chhun (fictional character in Thang), 420
Tu Wan (scholar of mineralogical interests, +1133), 450
Tuan Chhêng-Shih (scholar and writer, fl. +863), 197
Tuan-Fang altar set, 14–15
Tuan Lüeh (fictional character in Thang), 419
Tuan Wén-Chieh (painter), 66
Tuba (Huichol and Tagalog word for fermented must before distillation), 110
al-Tughrâ'i, Abû Ismâ'il al-Husain ibn 'Ali (d. +1121), 402, 405, 415, 435 (h), 482
Tui (spherical container possibly used as a reaction-vessel), 23–4, 25
pottery imitations as tomb-goods, 25
Tuku Thao (Wu Tai alchemical writer, c. +950), 393 (l), 441, 442
Tung-Chen Ling Shu Tzu-Wén Lang-Kan Hua Tan Shang Ching (Divinely Written Exalted Manual in Purple Script on the Lang-Kan (Gem) Radiant Elixir; a Tung-Chen Scripture), 217
Tung-Chen Thai-Wei Ling Shu Tzu-Wén Shang Ching (Divinely Written Exalted Canon in Purple Script), 217
Tung-chêng, alcohol still at, 64, 65
Tung Chhi-Chhang (artist, +1555 to +1636), 383, 384
Tung Chung-Shu (scholar, and philosopher, —179 to —104), 286, 305, 307, 308, 311
(*Tung-Hsian*) *Ling-Pao Fu Ching* (Manual of the Five Talismans . . .), 141
Tung oil, 315
Tung-thing Chhun Sê Fu (Spring Colours by the Tung-thing Lake), 145
Tungus. *See Tribal peoples*
Turba Philosophorum, 366, 397, 398–9
Turfan, 140, 151, 155, 157, 438, 441
capture of, 136, 139
Turkestan, 140, 416, 421, 438
Turki dancing-girls, 416
Turkic States of Western Central Asia, 423
Turkic tribes. *See Tribal peoples*
Turkish language, 352
Tus, 409, 422, 425
al-Tüsî, Nasîr al-Dîn, al-Muhaqqiq, statesman, patron of science, astronomer and founder of the Marâghah Observatory, (+1201 to +1274), 425 (g)
al-Tüsî. *See Firdawsi*
al-Ghazâli . . .
Tutty, 427 (f)
Twelve Chapters on the Science of the Most Honourable Stone (Uşânîs, Ostanes). *See Kitâb al-Fuṣûl* . . .
Twelve Hour-Presidents (Spirits of the Double-Hours), 280
Two Chapters on the Ninefold Cyclically Transformed Gold Elixir. *See Chiu Huan Chin Tan Erh Chang*
Two-element processes, 233, 251
Two lines of constant slope, 270
Two-variable phasing. *See Firing cycle*
Tyrosinase, 209
Tyrosine, 209
Tzhu-huang shui (aqueous solution of orpiment), 170
Tzhu-shih shui (aqueous solution of magnetite), 170
Tzintzontzin (island), 108
Tzu chien (salt), 180
Tzu Wei Fu-jen (Lady of the Circumpolar Zone), 216
Udyâna, King of, 354
Uighur people, 155, 157, 441
Ulcerations, 287, 442, 450
'Umâra ibn Hamza ('Abbâsid envoy at Byzantium, c. +772), 391
al-'Umari. *See Abn'l 'Abbas Ahmad Shihâb al-Dîn* . . .
Umayyad Caliphate (+661 to +750), 389, 390
ambassador from, 417
Umebara Sueji (3), 32
Underground growth
of metals and minerals, 211, 223–4, 231, 233, 235–6
of the Natural Cyclically Transformed Elixir, 295
Underground repositories of secret chemical writings, 335, 369, 412
Unseen World, 220, 221, 291
Upward and downward transformations in Nature, 408 (a)
Urdu dialect, 352
Urea, 384
Urfa (Edessa), 410
Uric acid, and bleaching, 315
Urine, 175, 434
pure water obtained from, 154
and the manufacture of nitrate of potash, 192
of the lynx, 363

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

INDEX

757

- Urumchi, 438, 441, 442
 Urushiol, 209, 210
Usquebeatha (*usquebaugh*), 110
 Ustānis. *See* Ostanes
 'Utārid' (*Sābian god*), image of, 428
 'Uthmān ibn Suwayd al-Ikhmīmī. *See* al-Ikhmīmī,
 'Valentine, Basil'. *See* Thölde, Johann
 Vapours, mystical significance of, 386
 Varenius, Bernard (traveller, +1673), 323
Variarum Observationum Liber (Vossius), 324 (a)
 Vat still. *See* Stills
 Vaughan, Thomas (alchemical writer, +1622 to
 +1666), 505
 Vegetable processes, in preparation of elixirs, 217
 von Veltheim, Count (+1799), 339
 The Venerable Master Lei's Treatise on the
 Decoction and Preparation of Drugs. *See*
 Lei Kung Phao Chih Lun
 Venetians, 434
 Venus (planet), 226, 227, 228, 428
 Vermilion (pigment), 45 (f), 302
 See also Cinnabar
 Vestments, colour of, 465 (e)
 de Veteri Castro. *See* Wenod de Veteri Castro,
 Johannes
 Victoria and Albert Museum, London, 67
Vida (solvent), 198
Vidyādhara-yantra, 104 (e), 106 (b)
 Vietnam, and the Vietnamese, 68, 418
 Vietnamese stills, 118, 119
 Vilcacamba Valley, Ecuador, 507
 Villanovan Corpus (early +14th century), 366,
 451, 498, 507 (a)
 Vincent of Beauvais (Dominican encyclopaedist,
 d. c. +1264), 362, 388
 Vinegar, 40, 58, 136, 164, 169, 172, 174, 175, 176,
 177, 201, 202, 320
 concentration of, 177
 distillation of, 128, 158, 162, 177–8
 for preventing moulds, 315
 for removing corrosion, 315
 white, 196
 'Vinegar-bath' procedure, 177
 Vipers, 496
Virus, 483
 Viscera, artificial, inserted in statues, 489 (c)
Vishnu Purāna, 377 (j)
 Visions, 213–14
 'Vital' Lead and Mercury, 254 (a)
 Vitalis du Four (Franciscan pharmacist and
 chemist, d. +1327), 122 (f), 196, 199
Vitex negundo, 205
Vitis Thunbergii, 137
 Vitriol, 199 (a), 395
 blue, 203, 204
 green. *See* Copperas
 oil of, 196, 198
 Volatile substances, 395, 434, 470
 mystical significance of, 386
 Volatilisation, 361
 subduing by, 270–1
 Volcanic activity, and the production of sal
 ammoniac, 437, 438, 439
 Volcanic regions, 188
 'Voluntary', 503
Von den natürlicher Dingen (Paracelsus), 506
 Vossius, Isaac (polymath, +1618 to +1669), 323,
 350
 Voyages and expeditions, 136, 354
 of Chang Chhien, 387
 of Chēng Ho, 61
 of Chinese sailors on rafts or dismasted junks,
 110
 of Filipino sailors, 110
 to the Great Wall, 426
 Wadi Natrun (desert), 180
Wahlverwandtschaften (Goethe), 321
Wai Kho Chēng Tsung (Orthodox Manual of
 External Medicine), 183 (f)
Wai tan (practical laboratory alchemy). *See*
 Alchemy, laboratory and Outer elixir
Wai Tan Pêñ Tshao (Iatrochemical Natural
 History), 184 (e), 189 (d)
Wai Thai Pi Yao (Important Medical Formulae
 and Prescriptions revealed by a Provincial
 Governor), 287, 440, 442
Wakan Sanzai Zue (Chinese and Japanese
 Universal Encyclopaedia), 438 (d)
 Walking on air, 500, 501
 Wan Chieh (one of the Four Lords of Liang), 153
 Wan-fo-hsia, cave-temples, 66, 67
 Wang Chhung (sceptical philosopher, +83), 133,
 253, 293, 308
 Wang Chieh (Sung aurifactor), 402 (h), 451
 Wang Chin (7), 147
 Wang Fu (archaeologist, geographer and politician,
 d. +1126), 51 (b)
 Wang Hsing (Han alchemist, +1st century), 330
 Wang Hsüan-Tshê (ambassador to the court of
 Magadha, +648), 197
 Wang Ling, 148
 Wang Mang (Hsin emperor, r. +9 to +23), 147,
 222, 465
 Wang Shih-Phêng (+12th-century literary critic),
 161
 Wang Ssu-Lang (fictional character in Thang),
 419
 Wang Than (Han alchemist), 330
 Wang Thao (high official and medical writer,
 +752), 287, 288, 289, 440
 Wang Wei-Hsüan (Han alchemist, +2nd cen-
 tury), 331
 Wang Ying (nutritionist and pharmaceutical
 naturalist, c. +1520), 136
 Ware, J. R. (5), 134, 353
 al-Warrāq. *See* Ibn Abi Ya'qub al-Nadīm . . .
 Warring States (period), 308, 322
 bronze *hsien* from, 28
 conversion of cinnabar to mercury in, 45
 'rainbow vessel', 51
 Washburn molecular still, 100, 101
 Wasitzky, A. (1), 98, 101

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

758

INDEX

- Water, 252, 254, 259
 collected from soil and plant materials, 98
 distilled, 61–2
 and the tuning of musical instruments, 24
 ‘Realised’, 254, 255
 sea-. *See* Sea-water
- Water-bath (‘bain-marie’), 32, 33, 34, 87, 126, 127, 128, 161
 evaporating to dryness on, 169
- Water-clock. *See* Clepsydra
- ‘Water-condenser’ fragments, excavated at Taxila, 85–6
- Water-jackets, 35, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 72, 91, 93
 ‘Water of Life’, 415 (d), 481, 482
- Water-power, 487
- Water-raising wheel, 386
- Water-seal rim. *See* Annular rim or gutter
- Water-tube boilers, 40
- Waterproofing cream or varnish, 452
- al-Wâthiq (ninth ‘Abbâsid Caliph, r. +842 to +847), 426
- Watson, W. & Willetts, W. (1), 23, 24, 26, 27, 28, 29
- Wave-theory, 308
- Wax, 387
 filtration through, 60
- Ways of the Eyes to Survey the Provinces of the Great States. *See* *Masalik al-Absar fi Mamâlik al-Amsâr*
- Weather forecasting, 314, 390
- Weavers, 416
- Wei (State), prohibition of drinking, 147
- Wei (river), 189
- Wei (technical term), 7 (b)
- Wei-Chi hexagram, 5 (c), 70–1, 79
- Wei-chi lu (‘imperfect-accomplishment’ stove), 68, 70, 71, 72, 73, 284, 285
- Wei Hsiao (orthographer and philologist, +1483 to +1543), 446
- Wei Hua-Tshun (Taoist matriarch, fl. + 350 to +380), 213, 216, 364
- Wei Kang (‘false steel’), 189 (a)
- Wei kuang ting (reaction-vessel of intense brightness), 12
- Wei Po-Yang (eminent alchemist and writer, fl. +140), 12, 16, 249, 252, 253, 285, 316, 329, 331
- Wei Shu (History of the (Northern) Wei Dynasty), 440
- Wei Wên Ti (ruler of the State of Wei, Three Kingdoms period, r. +220 to +226), 136, 138
- von Weigel, C. E. (+1773), 98
- Weighings, 166, 266 (d), 301, 304 (a), 305 (a), 394
- Weights
 in alchemical operations, 15, 266, 268, 270, 273 ff., 277, 301, 304 (a)
- ‘Well-field’ arrangement of land allocation, 464
- Wenod de Veteri Castro, Johannes (+1420), 93, 94, 98, 111
- The West. *See* Europe
- Western Central Asia, 421 ff.
- Western Chin (dynasty)
 tomb, 30
- Western Pool Collected Remarks. *See* *Hsi Chhi Tshungshia*
- ‘Wet method’, of copper extraction, 203–4, 315
- ‘What the ancients said about the Egg’, 367
- Whisky, 110
- White Mountain, 440
- White, W. C. (3), 29
- White Tiger, 420
- Whitening, 9, 412
- Wiedemann, E., 389, 483; (26), 451
- Wiegleb, J. C. (apothecary and historian of alchemy and chemistry, +1732 to 1800), 324
- Wilhelm, H., 388
- William of Auvergne (theologian interested in magic, d. +1249), 487 (h)
- William of Ockham (proto-scientific philosopher, early +14th century), 69
- William of Sicily (King, in Roger Bacon’s works), 495, 496 (a)
- Wilson, W. J. (2 b, c), 1
- Wine, 139, 317
 ‘after-burning wine’, 143
 ‘burnt’, 133, 135, 143, 145, 156
 cereal-, 138–9, 149, 155, 157, 162
 distillation of, 67, 123, 125, 127–8, 144, 145–6, 155, 158
 export of, 149
 fermented, 144
 ‘fire’ or ‘fire-pressured’, 135, 146
 fortified, 68 (a)
 ‘frozen-out’, 136, 140, 151–4, 155–7, 162, 179
 grape-, 136–41, 149, 150, 151–2, 155, 157, 162
 used for medical purposes, 123
 mulled, 144, 146
 made from oranges, 145
 preservation of, 151–2
 white, 142
- Wine-drinking through a straw, 146
- Wine-making, private, 147
- Womb, and the reaction-vessel, 292, 293, 297, 367
- Women, and angels, 341 ff.
 in proto-chemistry and alchemy, 83 (a), 364
- The Wondrous Art of Nourishing the (Divine) Embryo by the use of the secret Formula of the Regenerative Enchymoma. *See* *Huan Tan Pi Chiüeh Yang Chihh-Tzu Shen Fang*, 2
- World-conceptions, 379, 385–6
- Chinese, 502
- World-organism, 306
- Wotjaks. *See* Tribal peoples
- Woulfe bottle, 156, 166
- Wounds, 149, 473, 481
- Wrought iron. *See* Iron
- Wu (State), 332, 337
- Wu Chen Phien (Poetical Treatise on the . . . Primary Vitalities), 12 (f), 17 (c), 319
- Wu-Chhang (Udyâna), 188
- Wu Chhêng (Northern Chou wine official, +6th century), 150

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

INDEX

759

- Wu Ching-Lieh, 192 (e)
Wu Ching Tsung Yao (Collection of the Most Important Military Techniques), 190 (e), 194 (d), 402 (h)
Wu Hsiang Lei Pi Yao. See *Tshan Thung Chhi Wu Hsiang Lei Pi Yao*
Wu Hsing Ta I (Main Principles of the Five Elements), 465 (a)
Wu Lei Hsiang Kan Chih (On the Mutual Responses of Things according to their Categories), 208, 310, 315
Wu Li Hsiao Shih (Small Encyclopaedia of the Principles of Things), 5 (c), 297
Wu Liang tomb-shrines, 465
Wu Lu-Chhiang & Davis, T. L., 353
Mr. Wu's Pharmaceutical Natural History. See *Wu Shih Pén Tshao*
Wu Shih Pén Tshao (Mr Wu's Pharmaceutical Natural History), 203 (a)
Wu Shih Wai Kuo Chuan (Records of Foreign Countries in the Time of the State of Wu), 337
Wu Tai (Five Kingdoms Period), 145, 158, 161, 242, 417, 419, 445, 468
Wu Tai Shih Chi. See *Hsin Wu Tai Shih*
Wu Té-To (I), 133
Wu Tsang Ching (Manual of the Five Viscera), 213 (c)
Wu Tshêng, 249 (d)
Wu Wu (writer on alchemical apparatus, +1163), 2, 148, 233, 289, 293, 403 (a)
- Xanthōsis*. See Yellowness and yellowing
Xenophanes (Eleatic philosopher, fl. —535), 359 (h), 399, 400
Xérion ('dry powder of projection'), 473
Xerxes I (King of Persia, r. —485 to —465), 334
Xiphilinus, Joannes (Byzantine Patriarch, late +11th century), 501 (e)
- Yahyā ibn Khālid, 479
Yamada Keiji (I), 310
Yang, Greater or 'mature', 276, 317
'Yang furnace', 284
Yang Hsi (Taoist religious writer, +330 to +387), 213–14, 215, 216, 218, 219
Yang Hsiung (mutationist and lexicographer, —53 to +18), 472
Yang Hui (mathematician, +1275), 464
Yang huo (conserving a glowing fire), 18, 57
Yang li kuo. See *Chhi kuo*
Yang lu stove, 13
Yang Tsai (Sung alchemist, +1052), 227, 274, 278
Yang-tzu Shan tomb, 163
Yangchow, 485
Yao fu (chemical pyx or 'bomb'), 22–6, 47
Yao Hsing Lun (Discourse on the Natures and Properties of Drugs), 441
Yao Khuan (Sung pharmaceutical naturalist, c. +1150), 188
- Yao lu* (chemical stove), 10
Yao Ming Yin Chüeh (Secret Instructions on the Names of Drugs and Chemicals), 188
Yao Yuan-Chih (scholar and writer, +18th century), 443
Yaśodhara (+13th-century alchemist in India), 198
Yates, Frances (1), 240
Year length, 266
Yeasts, 135, 138–9, 317, 351, 365, 366, 367, 384, 405, 408
Yedo, 193
Yeh Té-Hui, 311
Yeh Tzu-Chhi (eclectic nature-philosopher, c. +1378), 137, 157
'The Yellow and the White', 357
The Yellow Emperor's Canon of the Nine-Vessel Spiritual Elixir, with Explanations. See *Huang Ti Chiu Ting Shen Tan Ching Chüeh*
The Yellow Emperor's Manual of Corporeal Medicine. See *Huang Ti Nei Ching*, Su Wēn
The Yellow Emperor's Nine-Vessel Sublimed Elixir, 291
Yellow Springs, 224
Yellow Sprouts, 228 230, 252, 255, 256, 257, 258, 259, 261, 316 (d)
process for preparation of, 260 ff.
Yellowness and yellowing, 9, 412
Yen (steamer), 27
Yen-Tshai (perhaps Khwarism), 336
Yen yü (wild vine species), 137
Yen yieh lu (inverted-moon stove), 12, 13
Yggdrasil, 427 (c)
Yin, Greater or 'mature', 317
'the Yin within the Yang', 251–2, 259, 320
Yin and Yang, 69, 79, 121, 156–7, 210, 220, 223, 224, 226, 227, 228, 230, 232, 234, 235, 240, 244, 247–8, 250, 251, 252, 253–5, 257, 261, 264, 265, 267, 270, 271, 273, 274, 275, 276, 278, 305, 306, 308, 317, 329, 359, 363, 364, 371, 373, 379, 388, 401, 450, 458–9, 465, 468, 469–70, 477, 503
automatic reversion of, 282–3
categories and, 319–20, 361
Yin Chen-chün (the deified adept Yin, alchemist), 258, 309 (c)
Yin Chen Chün Chin Shih Wu Hsiang Lei (Similarities and Categories of the Five Substances among Metals and Minerals by the Deified Adept Yin), 309 (c), 319 (h)
Yin Chhang-Shéng (putative master, or first commentator, of Wei Po-Yang), 3, 331, 400
Yin Hêng (Han elixir-maker, —2nd century), 330
Yin Kuei (Chin alchemist, c. +290 to +307), 357
Yin Shan Chéng Yao (Principles of Correct Diet), 135, 137, 140
Yin ting (silver vessel), 16
Yin-Yang Chiu Chuan Chhêng Tzu-Chin Tien-Hua Huan Tan Chüeh (Secret of the Cyclically Transformed Elixir . . .), 261
Yin-Yang symbol or diagram, 320, 379
Ying Yai Shêng Lan (Triumphant Visions of the Ocean Shores), 136 (a)

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-08574-8 - Science and Civilisation in China: Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Part V:

Spagyrical Discovery and Invention: Apparatus, Theories and Gifts: Volume 5

Joseph Needham

Index

[More information](#)

- Ying yü* (wild vine species), 137
Yo-Hu-Nan (Johanian, probably a Christian Uighur, +1347), 337
Yogis, 497–8
Yolatl, 110 (a)
Yolk of egg, 295
Yoshida Mitsukuni, 287
Young persons, exhalations of, 496–7
Youth, restoration of, 482, 490
Yü (semi-legends emperor, the Great Engineer), 462
Yü Chhing Nei Shu (Inner Writings of the Jade-Purity Heaven), 232 (e), 235 (f), 264, 274 (a), 292 (g)
Yü-hsien, Central Honan, pottery stove excavated at, 14
Yu Huan Chi Wén (Things heard and seen on my Official Travels), 160, 190
Yü nü (Jade Girls, houris, angels), 480 (e)
Yü Phien (literary dictionary), 440
Yü Tung Ta Shen Tan Sha Chen Yao Chüeh (True and Essential Teachings about the Great Magical Cinnabar of the Jade Heaven), 2
Yu-Yang Tsa Tsu (Miscellany of the Yu-yang Mountain Cave), 144, 197
Yü yen fei (technical term), 7
Yü Yün-Wên (scholar and high official, +1110 to +1174), 190
Yuan (dynasty), 135, 149, 157, 162, 204, 212, 337, 417
 alchemical apparatus, 12
 grape wine, 137
Yuan Chhi Lun (Discourse on the Primary Vitality), 293
Yuan Han-Chhing (I), 1, 4, 133, 139–40, 182
Yuan Miao-Tsung (Taoist liturgical writer, +1016), 465
Yün Chi Chhi Chhien (The Seven Bamboo Tablets of the Cloudy Satchel), 3, 11, 13, 17, 23, 168
Yün Hsien Tsa Chi (Miscellaneous Records of the Cloudy Immortals), 159
Yün-mu shui (aqueous suspension of mica), 171
Yün shuang tan (frosty sublimate elixir), 330
Yung chhüan kuei (bubbling spring casing), 19
Yung Thao (Thang poet, c. +840), 143
Yunnan, 115–17
al-Zāhid, Sheikh Aḥmad ibn Sulaīmān (alchemist, d. c. 1420), 408
al-Zahrāwī. See Abū al-Qāsim . . .
Zā'iraja Khiṭā'iyya (geomantic divination method), 471
Zapotec still, 107
Zarārusht-nāma, 439 (c)
al-Zayyāt, Abū Ṭālib ibn Aḥmad (naturalist, fl. c. +930), 449 (j)
Zedoary root, 452
Zend language, 334
Zeno (the Isaurian, Byzantine emperor, r. +474 to +491), 410
‘Zig-zag functions’, 270, 275
Zinc, 33, 294, 295, 428, 431–2
 amalgamation with mercury, 317
 carbonate, 435
 compounds, 358
 oxide, 295
 sulphide, 177
Zoë (Byzantine empress, r. +1042 to +1050), 501
Zoroaster, apocrypha attributed to, 334 (b)
Zoroastrianism, 334, 416, 426 (c)
Zosimus of Panopolis (proto-chemist philosopher, +3rd century), 71, 90, 92, 125, 127, 167, 313, 318, 327, 331, 335, 337, 340–1, 344–5, 347, 348, 357, 361, 365, 397, 473 (h), 476, 478 (d), 487 (h)
al-Zubair. See Qādī al-Rashīd ibn al-Zubair
Zymē (yeast), 351, 365